



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

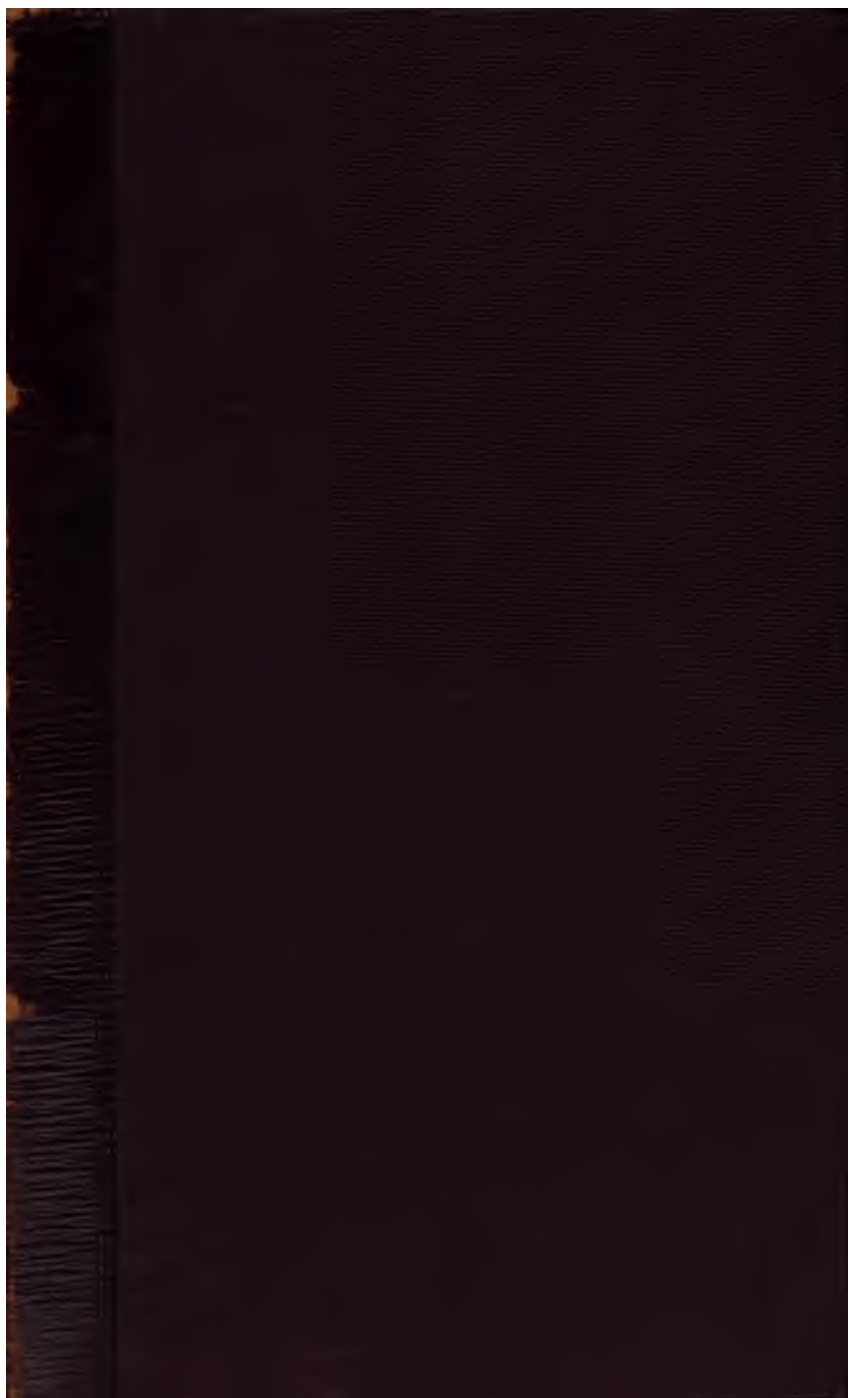
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

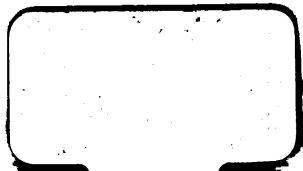


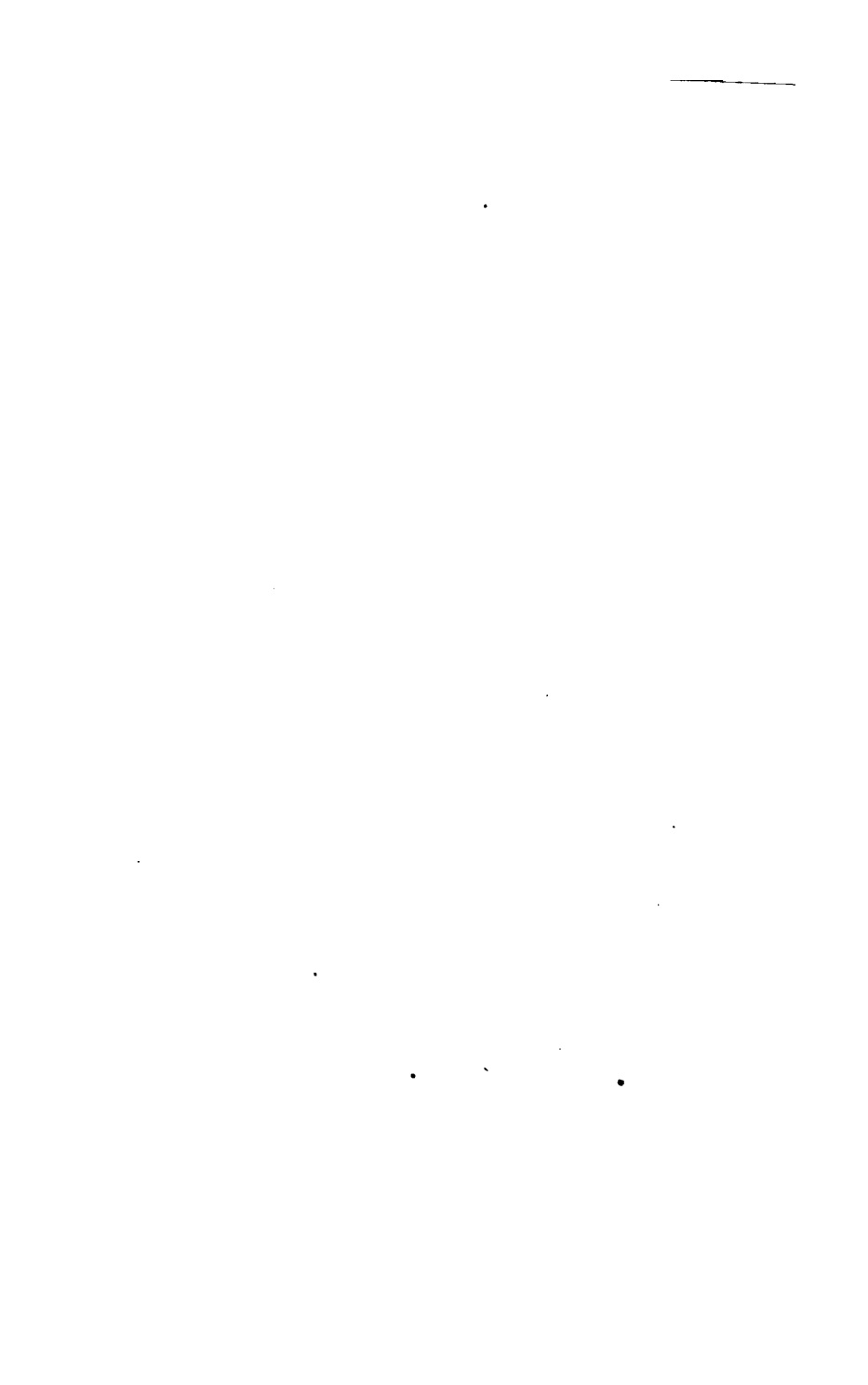


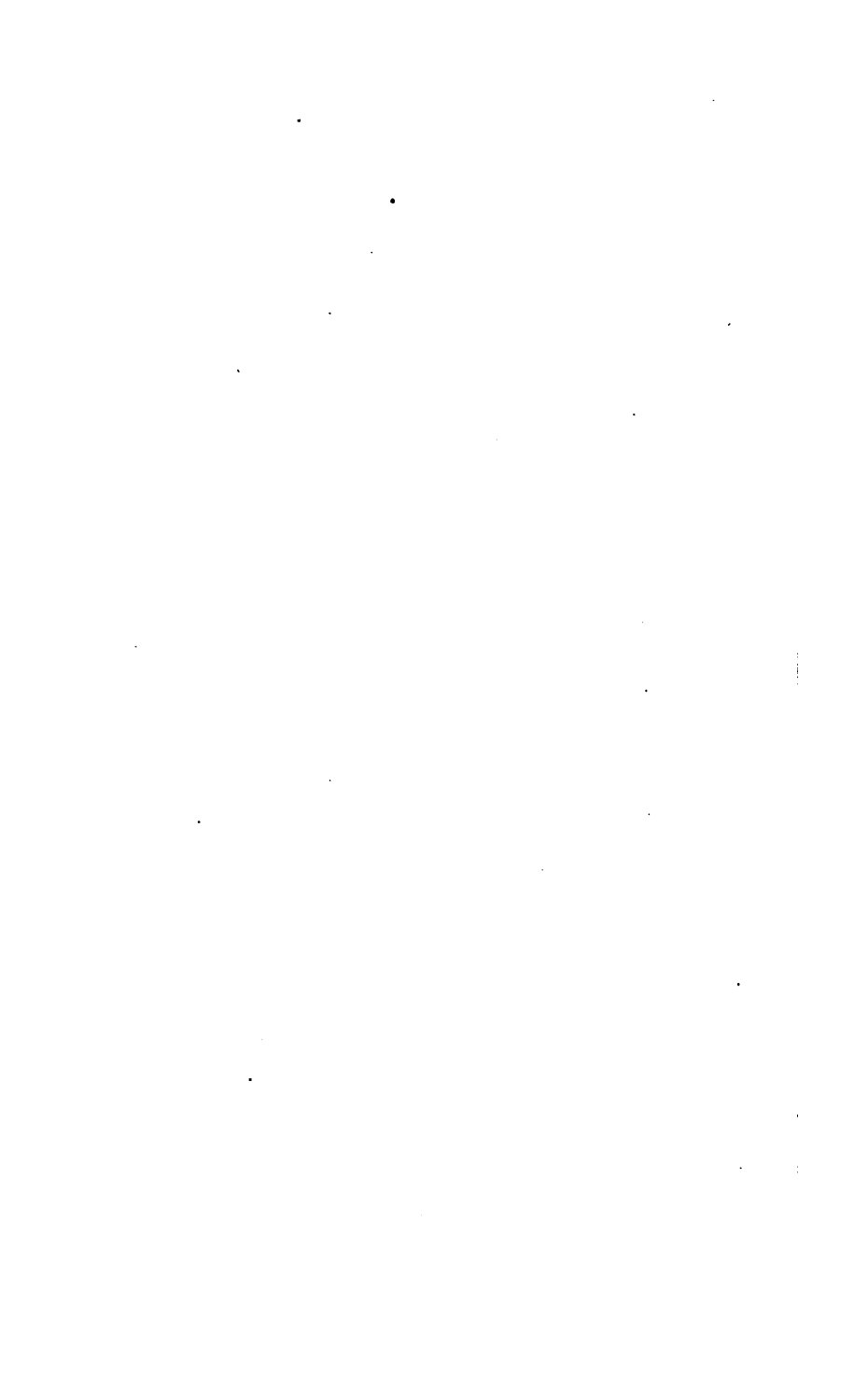




600089711W







THEORY AND PRACTICE;

OR A

PROGRESSIVE, CLEAR, & PRACTICAL COURSE

OF THE

GERMAN LANGUAGE.

(Chiefly adapted from Meidinger's Grammaire Allemande Pratique.)

CONTAINING

A PRACTICAL GRAMMAR WITH CONVERSATIONAL EXERCISES,
AN EASY INTRODUCTION TO TRANSLATING GERMAN,
ANNOTATIONS, AND REFERENCES TO THE GRAMMAR.

BY

J. N. VLIELAND,

*Many years Professor of French and German in King Edward the Sixth's
Grammar School, Norwich, and Author of*

FRENCH THEORY AND PRACTICE
FIRST FRENCH READER
FRENCH FINISHING READER
FRENCH PARSING
FRENCH DICTATION
FRENCH SPEAKING TEACHER

FRENCH CHIT-CHAT
FRENCH MANUAL
FRENCH SPEAKING VOCABULARY
FRENCH GENDERS
ITALIAN THEORY AND PRACTICE
FIRST ITALIAN READER

"USUS MAGISTER EST OPTIMUS."

LONDON:

SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO.; AND HAMILTON, ADAMS, & CO.;
NORWICH: T. PRIEST, SAINT STEPHEN'S STREET.

1851.

303. C. 142.

PRINTED BY T. PRIEST,
SAINT STEPHEN'S STREET, NORWICH.

TO
PARENTS AND TEACHERS.

THE German Language becoming every day more popular and necessary as a branch of a liberal education in this Country, the mind of those concerned in communicating a knowledge of the same has naturally been turned to ameliorating the means of facilitating its acquisition, and hence the increase of elementary works for that purpose.

How far the efforts of those who have published their methods have been successful, is not for me to say ; but I may be permitted to give my opinion as a practical Teacher, and one who has strictly and impartially examined many of them, that, although I feel convinced not a few of them have been written by very superior scholars, yet the simplicity and clearness so desirable to lead the student, by easy and well regulated gradations, to the acquisition of a Practical, as well as a Theoretical, knowledge of the language, has not been sufficiently attended to ; and the display of the author's attainments is far more

prominent than the desideratum for which the work ought to have been written.

The present work, which in a great measure has been translated from Meidinger's celebrated "*Grammaire Allemande Pratique*," and which I have assimilated to my Theoretical and Practical course of the French and Italian languages, is intended to embrace the desideratum above alluded to, and I sincerely trust it may meet with the same encouragement with which my former works have been honoured.

In this Guide, the Theory and Practice of the language, by its two divisions, is so blended as to keep pace with each other; and, instead of burdening the mind of the Pupil with an accumulation of rules and exceptions, he is led by clear and simple principles to the attainment of his object.

In conclusion, allow me to observe, that I hope the whole of this work will be found so constructed, as to form a short and A REALLY PRACTICAL GUIDE to the language, both as spoken and written: and in tendering my best thanks for your extensive patronage,

I am,

Your most obedient Servant,

J. N. V.

Norwich, November, 1851.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

| Page. | PRONUNCIATION. | Rule. |
|-------|---|--------|
| 1 | GERMAN ALPHABET | |
| — | Double or Compound Letters | |
| — | Modified Vowels | |
| 2 | General Rules for Pronunciation | |
| — | Particular Rules for Pronunciation | |
| — | Pronunciation of Vowels | |
| 3 | Pronunciation of Diphthongs | |
| 4 | Pronunciation of Consonants | |
| 6 | Exercise on Pronunciation | |
| | SECOND PART. | |
| 7 | Parts of Speech in German | 1 |
| — | DECLENSION OF ARTICLES | 2, 3 |
| 8 | EXPLANATION OF CASES | 4 |
| — | Nominative Case | — |
| — | Genitive Case | 5 |
| — | <i>Remark.</i> —The Genitive placed before the Case governed | — |
| 9 | Weeks and Days used in the Genitive | — |
| — | The Dative Case | 6 |
| — | Prepositions Governing the Dative | — |
| — | Prepositions Governing the Accusative | 7 |
| — | Observations on the Accusative and Dative | — |
| — | Vocative Case | 8 |
| 10 | Ablative Case | 9 |
| — | Signs of the Ablative | — |
| — | <i>Remark</i> on auß instead of von | — |
| — | OBSERVATIONS ON DECLENSIONS | |
| — | First Declension | 10, 19 |
| 11 | Feminine Nouns not Declined in the Singular | — |
| — | Plural of Feminine Nouns in el, et | 19 |
| — | Second Declension | 11, 20 |
| 12 | <i>Remark</i> on <i>Ua, Do</i> | — |
| — | Third Declension | 12, 21 |
| — | Fourth Declension | 13, 22 |
| 13 | Declension of Compound Nouns | 14 |
| — | Nouns terminating in <i>in</i> | — |
| — | Genitive of Nouns in <i>ß, ß, 3, §</i> | — |
| — | Plural of <i>mann</i> | — |
| — | Contractions | 15 |
| — | Abbreviations | 16 |
| 14 | Diminutives | 17 |
| — | Construction | 18 |
| — | DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS | |
| — | First Declension | 19 |
| 15 | Declension of <i>Mutter</i> and <i>Tochter</i> | |
| 16 | List of Nouns of the First Declension that modify the Vowels <i>a, o, u</i> | |

| Page. | | Rule. |
|-------|---|--------|
| 16 | Observation on <i>Kloster</i> | |
| 17 | Exercise on the First Declension | |
| — | Second Declension | 20 |
| 18 | Lists of Nouns of the Second Declension | |
| —† | Observation on Nouns in <i>ſt</i> | |
| 20 | Remark on <i>Ding</i> | |
| 21 | Exercise on the Second Declension | |
| — | Third Declension | 21 |
| 22 | List of Nouns of the Third Declension | |
| —§ | <i>Mensch</i> , pl. <i>Menschen</i> | |
| 24 | Declension of <i>Herz</i> and <i>Schmerz</i> | |
| — | Exercise on the Third Declension | |
| — | Fourth Declension | 22 |
| 25 | List of Nouns of the Fourth Declension | |
| —† | Note on <i>Band</i> | |
| 26 | Declension of Nouns compounded with <i>Mann</i> | 23 |
| —* | Note on <i>Land</i> | |
| 27 | <i>Mann</i> , <i>Fuß</i> , <i>Pfund</i> , &c. not used in the Plural | |
| — | Exercise on the Fourth Declension | |
| — | Declension of Proper Names | 24 |
| 28 | Exercise on Proper Names | |
| — | Declension of Nouns used in a particular sense | 25 |
| — | Gender of Nouns | 26 |
| 31 | Gender of Compound Words | |
| 32 | Formation of Nouns | 27 |
| — | Formation of Diminutives | 28 |
| 33 | Nouns that take <i>ihl</i> for their Feminine | 29 |
| — | Words that have a distinct word for the Feminine | — |
| — | Composition of Words | 30 |
| 34 | ADJECTIVES | |
| — | Place of Adjectives | 31 |
| — | Agreement of Adjectives | 32 |
| 35 | Declension of Adjectives | 33 |
| 36 | Remarks on the Declension of Adjectives | |
| — | Adjectives Declined with the Possessive Pronoun | Rem. 4 |
| — | Adjectives Declined without any Article | 34, 35 |
| 37 | Declension of Adjectives used Substantively | 36 |
| — | Substantives derived from the Names of Countries, Towns, &c. | 37, 38 |
| — | Exercise on Adjectives | |
| 40 | DEGREES OF COMPARISON | |
| — | Formation of the Degrees of Comparison | 39 |
| — | Adjectives in <i>el</i> may omit <i>e</i> | 40 |
| 41 | Superlative in <i>ſte</i> or <i>eſte</i> | — |
| — | When <i>a</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>u</i> , are modified in the degrees of comparison | 41, 42 |
| 42 | Comparative of <i>Wald</i> , <i>Gern</i> , <i>Gut</i> , <i>Biel</i> | 43 |
| — | <i>Gut</i> , <i>wenig</i> , (Degrees of) | 44 |

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

vii

| Page. | | Rule. |
|-------|--|--------|
| 42 | How to express Less before an adjective | 44 |
| — | Nicht so, der minder | — |
| — | Comparison of <i>Nahe</i> and <i>Soch</i> | 45 |
| — | Declension of the Comparison preceded by an Article | 46 |
| — | Than, <i>als</i> ; <i>as</i> , <i>wie</i> | 47 |
| — | EXERCISE on the Degrees of Comparison | — |
| 44 | NUMBERS | |
| — | Different Kinds of Numbers | 48 |
| — | List of Numbers | 48—58 |
| 45 | Formation of Ordinal Numbers | 49 |
| — | Declension of Numerals | 50, 51 |
| — | * <i>Zween</i> and <i>Dreo</i> | |
| 46 | Ordinal Numbers after Sovereigns | 52 |
| — | Fractional Numbers | 53 |
| — | To express the Hour | 54 |
| — | <i>Der zehnte</i> , <i>der Hunderste</i> | 55 |
| 47 | Proportional Numbers | 56 |
| — | Distributive, Substantive, and Adverbial Numbers | 57 |
| — | Collective Numbers | 58 |
| — | EXERCISE ON THE NUMBERS | — |
| 49 | PRONOUNS | |
| — | Declension of Personal Pronouns | 59 |
| 50 | Declension of <i>Sich</i> | 60 |
| — | Place of the Personal Pronoun | 61 |
| — | German Etiquette | 62 |
| 51 | Use of the Second Person Singular | 63 |
| — | Use of the Second Person Plural | 64 |
| — | Use of the Third Person Singular | 65 |
| 52 | Use of the Third Person Plural | 66 |
| — | Myself, Thyself, &c. | 67 |
| — | <i>Selbst</i> | — |
| — | <i>Wegen</i> used with <i>Meiner</i> , <i>Deiner</i> , &c. | 68 |
| 53 | EXERCISES ON THE PERSONAL PRONOUN | — |
| 55 | POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS | 69 |
| — | Declension of Conjunctive Possessives | 70 |
| — | Agreement of Possessive Pronoun | — |
| — | * <i>Unser</i> and <i>Euer</i> may drop <i>e</i> , | |
| 56 | Theirs expressed by <i>Ihren</i> | 71 |
| — | The Personal used instead of the Possessive | 72 |
| — | <i>Herr</i> , <i>Frau</i> , <i>Jungfer</i> , used after the Possessive Pronoun, or Article | 73 |
| 57 | <i>Der</i> , <i>Ihr</i> | |
| — | EXERCISE ON THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN | — |
| 59 | Declension of Possessive Disjunctive Pronouns | 74 |
| — | The Conjunctive Possessive used instead of the Disjunctive Possessive | — |
| 60 | Exercise on the Disjunctive Possessive | — |
| — | Demonstrative Pronouns | 75 |

| Page. | | Rule. |
|-------|---|-------------|
| 61 | Declension of Conjunctive Demonstrative Pronouns | 76 |
| — | Dieß or Dieß instead of Dieses | 77 |
| — | When the Singular of the Demonstrative Pronoun may end in <i>en</i> | 78 |
| — | EXERCISE ON DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS | |
| 62 | Declension of Demonstrative Disjunctive Pronouns | 79 |
| — | The Definite Article used instead of the Demonstrative Pronoun | 80 |
| —* | Das used in an absolute manner | |
| —† | Use of Desß | |
| — | Eben derselbe, &c. | 81 |
| 63 | Derselbige, dergleichen, dergleiche | 82 |
| — | Dieser hier, dieser da | 83 |
| — | Exercise on the Demonstrative Pronouns | |
| 64 | Relative and Interrogative Pronouns | 84 |
| — | Declension of Interrogative Pronoun | — |
| 65 | Use of Wer | 85, 91 |
| — | Use of Was | 86, 91 |
| — | Was für ein and Was für | 87, 88 |
| —* | Particular use of Welches | |
| — | Exercise on Interrogative Pronoun | |
| 66* | Wo and wor | |
| 67 | Relative Pronouns | 89 |
| — | Whose, of which | 90 |
| — | Dessen and deren | 90, 123 |
| — | He who, she who, that which | 91 |
| — | Selbst joined to a Relative Pronoun | 92 |
| — | So used as a Relative Pronoun | 93 |
| 68 | Exercise on Relative Pronouns | |
| 69 | INDEFINITE PRONOUNS | 94 |
| — | Ein, Keiner, Eins, Keins | 95, 96, 125 |
| — | Any, einiges | 97 |
| 70 | Aller, Alle, Alles | 98 |
| —* | Ganz | 99 |
| — | Beide, die beiden, beides | 100 |
| — | Solcher, solches, solche | 101 |
| — | Mancher, Manches, Manche | 102, 107 |
| 71 | Ein jeder, jeder | 103 |
| — | Jemand, Niemand, jedermann | 104 |
| — | Nichts, etwas | 105 |
| — | Viel, viele, vieles | 106 |
| 72 | Man | 108 |
| — | Etliche, verschiedene, einige | 109 |

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

ix

| Page. | | Rule. |
|-------|--|-----------|
| 72 | Anders, andere, anderes | 110 |
| — | However, howsoever, whatever | 111 |
| 73 | So groß, so viel, was für auch | — |
| — | Etwas, recht, vornehm, &c. | 112 |
| — | EXERCISE ON INDEFINITE PRONOUNS | |
| 77 | VERBS | |
| — | Auxiliary Verbs | 113 |
| — | Haben, seyn, werden | — |
| — | Conjugation of haben and seyn | — |
| — | ‡ The Present Participle of haben | — |
| 78 | Compound Tenses of seyn | Rem. 1 |
| 79† | Formation of the Future and Conditional | — |
| 84 | A Verb Conjugated Interrogatively | 114 |
| — | Negations † | 115 |
| — | Place of the Accusative and Dative | 116 |
| 85 | Place of the Accusative and Dative in Compound Tenses | 117 |
| — | Place of the Accusative and Dative in the Future and Conditional | 118 |
| — | Place of the Accusative and Dative when the sentence begins with daß | 119 |
| — | Place of davon, dessen, &c. | 120 |
| — | Use of davon, dessen, &c. | 121 |
| 86 | Use of da, dahin, hin, | 122 |
| 87 | Remark on hinauf, hinunter, hinaus, hinein, herein, hinüber | — |
| — | How to express <i>of it, of them</i> | 123 |
| — | Some or any expressed by welcher, welche, welches | 124 |
| — | How to express <i>none</i> | 125 |
| 88 | Use of hinein, herein, &c. | 126, 127 |
| — | EXERCISE ON AUXILIARY VERBS | |
| 92 | REGULAR VERBS | |
| — | Ending of the <i>Infinitive</i> | 128 |
| — | • <i>Ç</i> dropt after <i>l, eh, et, e,</i> &c. | — |
| — | † <i>Ç</i> dropt in the Past Participle | — |
| — | <i>Ç</i> omitted in the Past Participle | 129 |
| 93 | <i>Ç</i> omitted before Inseparable Prefixes | 130 |
| — | Formation of the Perfect of the Infinitive | 131 |
| — | Formation of the Present Participle | 132 |
| — | Formation of the Present Indicative and Subjunctive | 133 |
| — | Formation of the Imperfect of the Indicative and Subjunctive | 134 |
| — | <i>Ç</i> not omitted | 135 |
| — | Verbs in <i>den, then, ten, sten</i> | — |
| 94 | Formation of the Perfect and Pluperfect | 136 - 138 |
| — | Formation of the Future and Conditional | 139 |
| — | CONJUGATION OF A REGULAR VERB | 140 |

| Page. | | Rule. |
|-------|---|----------|
| 98 | Observation on the Root of a Verb | |
| — | € omitted before ft and t | |
| 99 | N.B.—The omission of t not allowed | |
| — | REMARKS ON MOODS AND TENSES | |
| — | How to render the Present Participle | 141 |
| — | Verbs that require zu or daß | 142 |
| 100 | Infinitive used without zu | 143 |
| — | N.B.—The Present Participle cannot be used after another Verb | |
| — | For to, in order to, um—zu | 144 |
| — | The Infinitive used instead of the Past Participle | 145 |
| 101 | Use of the Imperfect Indicative | 146 |
| —* | Use of the Compound of the Present | 147 |
| — | The Subjunctive Mood (Use of) | 148, 149 |
| 102 | The Imperfect Subjunctive | 150, 151 |
| —* | The Subjunctive not used after wenn | 151 |
| — | The Imperative | 152 |
| 103 | The Imperative used with lassen | 153 |
| — | The Imperative accompanied by doch, ja, gefälligst | 154 |
| —* | Ja, used to express Consolation or Hope | |
| — | How to translate the Present Participle | 155 |
| 104 | The Present Participle used Adjectively | 156 |
| — | The Auxiliary omitted | 157 |
| — | The Past Participle used in German and not in English | 158 |
| 105 | The Present Participle used to denote a Future | 159 |
| — | The Past Participle used for the Imperative | 160 |
| — | EXERCISE ON REGULAR VERBS | |
| 110 | CONJUGATION OF A PASSIVE VERB | 161 |
| —* | Geworden used instead of worden | |
| 114 | Explanation of the Passive Voice | 162 |
| — | Exercise on Passive Verbs | |
| 115 | NEUTER VERBS | 163 |
| 116 | REFLECTIVE VERBS | 164 |
| — | CONJUGATION OF REFLECTIVE VERBS | — |
| 118 | Remark. How to know a Reflective Verb | |
| 119 | List of some Reflective Verbs | |
| — | Particular Expressions | 165 |
| — | EXERCISE ON REFLECTIVE VERBS | |
| 120 | IMPERSONAL VERBS | 166 |
| 121 | Remark on there is, there are, it is, es ist, es gibt | 167 |
| — | List of Impersonal Verbs | 168 |
| 122 | Impersonal Verbs with the Accusative | 169 |
| — | Impersonal Verbs with the Dative | 170 |
| 123 | It is expressed by man | 171 |
| — | EXERCISE ON IMPERSONAL VERBS | |
| 124 | IRREGULAR VERBS, (Formation of) | 172—178 |
| 127 | List of Irregular Verbs | 179 |
| 135 | List of Neuter Verbs, with their appropriate Aux- iliary | 180 |

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

xi

| Page. | | Rule. |
|-------|--|------------|
| 136 | Compound Tenses of <i>gehen, laufen, fahren, frieren, reiten, treten, ziehen</i> | 181 |
| 137 | Compound Verbs | 182 |
| — | Conjugation of Separable Compound Verbs | — |
| 138 | List of Separable Compound Verbs | 183 |
| 139 | Place of the Separable Prefix | 184, 185 |
| — | The Prepositions <i>durch, um, unter, über, voll,</i> when separate | 186 |
| — | Nouns, Verbs, Adverbs, &c.. used in the same manner as Prefixes | 187 |
| 140 | Inseparable Prepositions | 188 |
| — | Ge not used with the Past Participle of Insepa- rable Prepositions | 189 |
| —* | On Verbs compounded with <i>mit</i> | |
| 141 | Difference between <i>zurück</i> and <i>wieder; wieder</i> and <i>wider</i> | 190 |
| — | EXERCISES ON IRREGULAR VERBS | |
| 146 | ADVERBS | 191 |
| 147 | List of Adverbs | |
| 151 | Place of Adverbs | 192 |
| 152 | Adverbs placed at the head of a sentence trans- pose the Nominative | 193 |
| — | EXERCISE ON ADVERBS | |
| 153 | Prepositions (List of) | 194 |
| — | Prepositions that govern the Genitive | — |
| — | Prepositions that govern the Dative | 195 |
| 154 | Prepositions that govern the Accusative | 196 |
| — | Prepositions that govern the Dative and Accu- sative | 197 |
| — | Contraction of Prepositions | 198 |
| — | Suppression of the Termination | 199 |
| 155 | Place of Prepositions | 200 |
| — | Place of <i>halben, zuwider, entgegen, über, hindurch</i> — Place of <i>wegen, unangesehen, ungeachtet, gegenüber</i> — Prepositions compounded with other words, and which require the Government between them | 201 202 |
| 156 | Remarks on <i>auf, in, für, vor, gegen, wider,</i> <i>bei, nach, von</i> | 203—210 |
| 158 | EXERCISE ON PREPOSITIONS | |
| 159 | CONJUNCTIONS | 211 |
| 160 | Place of Conjunctions | 212, 213 |
| — | Conjunctions compounded with <i>ob</i> and <i>wenn,</i> take the Nominative between them | 214 |
| 161 | Conjunctions that require to be followed by ano- ther Conjunction | 215 |
| 162 | <i>But</i> rendered by <i>sondern</i> | 216 |
| 162 | <i>Daß</i> and <i>wenn</i> omitted | 217 |
| — | <i>So</i> suppressed | 218 |
| 163 | Significations of <i>so</i> | 219 |

| Page. | | Rule. |
|---------|--|----------|
| 163 | EXERCISE ON CONJUNCTIONS | |
| 164 | INTERJECTIONS | 220 |
| | SECOND PART. | |
| 166 | SYNTAX | |
| — | Construction (Explanation of) | 221 |
| — | A Simple Sentence | 222 |
| 167 | A Compound Sentence | 223 |
| — | Regimen | 224 |
| — | The Case of the Verb | 225 |
| — | Oblique Cases | 226 |
| — | Rules for Construction | |
| — | General Principle or Rules for Construction | 227 |
| — | Place of the Adjective and Participle | 228 |
| — | Place of Words governed by an Adjective | 229 |
| 168 | Place of Words in Compound Tenses | 230 |
| — | Place of the Infinitive, Gerund, and Past Participle | 231, 232 |
| 169 | Place of <i>zu</i> , <i>um</i> , <i>ohne</i> | 233 |
| — | Place of the Gerund governing a Noun explained by a Relative | 234 |
| — | Place of Separable Prepositions | 235 |
| — | Place of the Nominative Verb | 236 |
| 170 | Words that Transpose the Nominative Verb | |
| 172 | Place of the Nominative Verb when <i>daß</i> is suppressed | 237 |
| — | Place of the Nominative Verb accompanied by two Infinitives | 238, 239 |
| 173 | Place of the Nominative Case | 240 |
| — | Nominative after the Verb | 241—248 |
| 174 | Place of the Regimens | 249, 250 |
| 175 | Place of Two Regimens governed by the same Verb | 251—253 |
| — | Place of the Attribute | 254 |
| — | Place of Adverbs and Prepositions | 255, 256 |
| 176 | Place of <i>nicht</i> | 257, 258 |
| — | Observations on <i>noch nicht</i> , and <i>nicht noch</i> | 259 |
| — | <i>Auch nicht</i> and <i>nicht auch</i> | 260 |
| 177 | Use of the Definite Article | 261—263 |
| — | Government of Nouns | 264 |
| 178 | Nouns used by Apposition | 265 |
| — | The Preposition of translated by <i>von</i> or <i>aus</i> | 266, 267 |
| — | Of not translated | 268 |
| — | Government of Adjectives | 269, 270 |
| 179 | Government of Verbs | 271, 272 |
| 181 | Particular use of the Preposition <i>an</i> , 273, <i>auf</i> , 274, <i>aus</i> , 275, <i>bei</i> , 276, <i>in</i> , 277, <i>mit</i> , 278, <i>nach</i> , 279, <i>nebet</i> , 280, <i>um</i> , 281, <i>unter</i> , 282, <i>von</i> , 283, <i>vor</i> and <i>für</i> , 284, <i>zu</i> , 285 | |
| 182 | Remarks on German Etiquette | |
| 196 | Promiscuous and Recapitulatory Exercises | |
| 208—230 | Introduction to German Translation | |
| 231—248 | Vocabulary and Explanatory Notes to Reading Lessons | |

GERMAN GRAMMAR.

PRONUNCIATION.

ALPHABET.

The GERMAN ALPHABET is composed of twenty-six letters, viz.—

| Vowels. | | Pronounced. | | Consonants. | | Pronounced. | |
|-------------|---|-------------|----------|-------------|----|-------------|-------|
| Ä | a | a | ah | ÿ | i | j | yott |
| É | e | e | a | Ʒ | f | k | kah |
| Ï | i | i | e | ℓ | l | l | ell |
| Ö | o | o | o | ℞ | m | m | emm |
| U | u | u | oo | ℞ | n | n | enn |
| ÿ | y | y | cepsilon | Ʒ | p | p | pay |
| | | | | Q | q | q | koo |
| | | | | ℞ | r | r | airr |
| Consonants. | | Pronounced. | | © | fθ | s | ces |
| B | b | b | bay | ℓ | t | t | tay |
| É | c | c | tsay | Ʒ | v | v | fow |
| Ð | d | d | day | ℞ | w | w | vay |
| Ʒ | f | f | eff | ℔ | x | x | eex |
| © | g | g | gay | ß | z | z | tsayd |
| Ð | h | h | hah | | | | |

DOUBLE OR COMPOUND LETTERS.

Äe or ä; Öe or ö; Ue or ü.

ck, dt, ff, ff, ff, sch, sp, st, t.

Remark.—ä, ö, ü, are called softened or modified vowels, but it should be observed that capitals are softened by placing e after them.

GENERAL RULES FOR PRONUNCIATION.

In German, every letter must be distinctly articulated. The final *t* is never mute, but resembles the *e* in *over*.

ſ is always aspirated when it begins a word.

The guttural sounds are *g* and *ch*, they resemble the *ch* in the Scotch *Loch*.

PARTICULAR RULES FOR PRONUNCIATION.

A has the broad sound of *a* in *all*, before *h*, or when it is doubled; and it sounds *ah* before a double consonant.

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| der *Vater, the father, | der Mann, the man, |
| der Aal, the eel, | das Jahr, the year. |

Ä or *ä*, like *a* in *late*.

| | |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| die Väter, the fathers, | die Männer, the men, |
| die Ähre, the ear of corn, | der Bär, the bear. |

E is sounded like *a* in *late*, except in the prefixes *be* and *ge*; at the end of a word it resembles *e* in *over*: *et* and *etſ* are long like *a* in *save*:—

| | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| das Elend, the misery, | die Ehre, the honour, |
| das Heer, the army, | der Gedanke, the thought. |

I is pronounced like *ee* in *beetle*: *ie* and *iſ* are long, like *ea* in *tease*:—

| | |
|------------------|------------------------|
| In, in, | Mitten, in the middle, |
| Wir, we, | Ihm, to him, |
| Lieben, to love, | Vier, four. |

O, when doubled, is long, and before *h*, like *o* in *bone*:

*All Substantives, and words used substantively, begin with a Capital letter in German.

single *o* before *f* or *t*, is short like *o* in *Lord*:—

das Boot, the boat, der Sohn, the son,
das Wort, the word, der Hof, the coat.

Oe, or *ö*, resembles *eu* in the French word *peur* or *jeune*, and somewhat the English *o* in *women*:—

das Oel, the oil, die Söhne, the sons.

*U** sounds like *u* in *full*:—

der Hut, the hat, die Uhr, the watch.

Ue, or *ü*, has no corresponding sound in English, except, perhaps, the *o* in *doing*, which may help the pupil; it sounds much like the *u* as pronounced in French.

die Hüte, the hats, die Flüsse, the rivers.

ÿ is sounded like *ee* in *beetle*.

PRONUNCIATION OF GERMAN DIPTHONGS.

Ai, Ay, Au, Aeu, Ei, Ey, Eu, Je, U.

The first two resemble the sound of the English pronoun *I*; the *Ei* and *Ey* are a little more slender, and may, perhaps, be compared to *i*, in *kite*:—

die Saite, the string, Seyn, to be,
die Seide, silk, Mein, mine.

Au sounds like *ow* in *vowel*:—

der Baum, the tree, die Frau, the woman.

Aeu, äu, eu, are sounded like *oi* in *voice*:—

die Bäume, the trees, die Reue, the repentance.

Je, ie, sound like *ie* in *field*:—

Stiel, handle, Wiese, meadow.

Ui, Uy, are sounded *oo-ee*.

*Never pronounce this letter like *u* in *pure*.

PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS.

NB.—Only those Consonants will be noticed, that have not the same power as in English.

B at the end of a word, is nearly as strong as *p* :
das Weib, the woman, der Dieb, the thief.

C, before *e*, *i*, and *y*, takes somewhat the sound of the Italian *c*, that is, like *ts*.

die Citrone, the lemon, die Ceder, the cedar.

Ch at the beginning of a word, before *a*, *o*, *u*, and *r*, takes the sound of *k*; but in other instances, it takes a guttural sound, which is produced by compressing gently the upper part of the throat, forming a breathing like *ch*, in the Scotch *loch*.

| | |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| das Dach, the roof, | Machen, to make, |
| das Licht, the light, | Rechnen, to reckon, |
| die Tochter, the daughter, | Suchen, to seek, |
| das Buch, the book, | China, China. |

Chs is sounded *ks* :—

Sechs, six, Wachsen, to grow.

Ch replaces *kk*, and makes the preceding vowel short.

Decken, to cover.

D at the end of a word is sounded *t* :—

das Bad, the bath.

H makes the preceding vowel short :—

hoffen, to hope.

G, at the beginning of a word is pronounced as in the English word *give* :—

Gabe, gift, Geld, money.

At the end of a syllable, or at the end of a word it is guttural, but rather softer than *ch* :—

der Magen, the stomach, der Regen, the rain,

der Vogel, the bird, der Betrug, the fraud,
Wenig, little, few, Sorglos, without care.

Rg resembles *n*, followed by *g* hard:—

die Länge, the length, der Ring, the ring.

§ as an initial, is always aspirated; it is mute in the middle and end of words, and then lengthens the preceding vowel:—

haben, to have, der Held, the hero,
das Mahl, the repast, die Wohnung, the dwelling.

J is pronounced like *y* in *yoke*:—

Jemand, somebody, Jagen, to sport.

Wf, Wn: both letters should be distinctly heard:

Knopf, button, Pferd, horse.

Du as in English.

Œ is like *sh* in *shall*:—

der Fisch, the fish, Schlafen, to sleep.

Œ, before *p* and *t* at the beginning of a word, is nearly like *sh*:—

Sparen, to save, Stehlen, to steal.

Th is pronounced without the *h*, and makes the syllable in which it occurs long:—

die That, the deed.

Ti is sounded *ts*:—

die Nation, the nation.

Tz is also sounded *ts*:—

das Netz, the net.

V is sounded like *f*:—

der Vogel, the bird.

Remark.—In French words, *v* is sounded like *r*.

W is sounded *v*:—

die Welt, the world, das Wasser, water.

z is sounded *ts*:—

der Zorn, anger, die Zeit, time.

Remark.—Doubled *z* is represented by *tz*:—

der Blitz, the lightning, (instead of *Blizz*.)

EXERCISE ON PRONUNCIATION.

Ein Kuckuck sprach zu einem Staar,
 Der aus der Stadt entflohen war;
 Was spricht man, fing er an zu schreien,
 Was spricht man in der Stadt von unsern Melodein?
 Was spricht man von der Nachtigall?
 Die ganze Stadt liebt ihre Lieder.
 Und von der Lerche? rief er wieder.
 Die halbe Stadt lobt ihrer Stimme Schall.
 Und von der Amsel? fuhr er fort.
 Auch diese lobt man hier und dort.
 Ich muß dich doch noch etwas fragen,
 Was, rief er, spricht man denn von mir?
 Das sprach der Staar, das weiß ich nicht zu sagen,
 Denn keine Seele redt von dir.
 So will ich, fuhr er fort, mich an den Undank rächen,
 Und ewig von mir selber sprechen.

SECOND PART.

1. There are nine Parts of Speech:—

| | | | |
|---------------------|------------------|--------|-----------------|
| 1. The Article | der Artikel | or das | Geschlechtswort |
| 2. The Noun | das Substantiv | " | Hauptwort |
| 3. The Adjective | das Adjectiv | " | Beiwort |
| 4. The Pronoun | das Pronomen | " | Fürwort |
| 5. The Verb | das Zeitwort | " | |
| 6. The Adverb | das Adverbium | " | Nebentwort |
| 7. The Preposition | das Präposition | " | Wortwort |
| 8. The Conjunction | die Conjunction | " | Bindewort |
| 9. The Interjection | die Interjection | " | Empfindungswort |

Remark.—In English, the noun, adjective, and pronoun admit of very few changes; but in German they are declined according to fixed rules.

2. DECLENSION OF THE GERMAN ARTICLES.

DEFINITE ARTICLE.

| | | Masc. | Fem. | Neuter. | Plural for all Genders. |
|-------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|----------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | the | der | die | das | die |
| <i>Gen.</i> | of the | des | der | des | der |
| <i>Dat.</i> | to the | dem | der | dem | den |
| <i>Acc.</i> | the | den | die | das | die |
| <i>Abl.</i> | from the* | von dem | von der | von dem | von den. |

* The ablative has also for signs *by, with, about*: it is always formed in German by using the preposition *von* before the dative.

3. INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

| | | Masc. | Fem. | Neuter. |
|-------------|---------|-----------|-----------|--------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | a or an | ein | eine | ein |
| <i>Gen.</i> | of a | eines | einer | eines |
| <i>Dat.</i> | to a | einem | einer | einem (no Plural.) |
| <i>Acc.</i> | a | einen | eine | ein |
| <i>Abl.</i> | from a | von einem | von einer | von einem. |

**GENERAL RULES FOR
DECLINING GERMAN NOUNS AND EXPLANATIONS
OF THE CASES.**

4. THE NOMINATIVE is the word in a sentence which is the agent or cause of the action expressed by the verb ;
Example:—

The Brother Writes.

Question: *Who writes ?* Answer: *The brother.*

Remark.—The nominative plural is always like the accusative and vocative of the same number.

5. THE GENITIVE expresses extraction or possession ; it answers the questions : *Of whom ? Of which ?* as :—

The brother of the King.

Q. *The brother of whom ?* A. *Of the King.*

Remarks.—1. The *masculine* and *neuter singular* generally terminate in *s* or *es*.

2.—In German as in English the genitive is often placed before the case that governs it :

Des Fürsten Bruder.* The Prince's brother.

* And then the nominative loses its article.

3. In answer to *When? How often?* the days of the week, *morning, evening, month, year*, are generally put in the genitive; as:—

Er kömmt des Morgens. He comes in the morning.

6. THE DATIVE. This case shows the tendency or direction of an object; it answers to the questions, *To whom? To which? To what?*—

Den Vätern. To the Fathers.

Remarks.—1. In the plural this case always ends in n.

2. The following prepositions govern the dative if a rest or *no* change of place be implied:—

An, at; auf, upon; in, in; hinter, behind; neben, next to; bei, near; vor, before; unter, under; as:—

An dem Fenster stehen. To stand by or at the window.

7. THE ACCUSATIVE—called in English the objective case, answers to the questions: *Whom? Which? What?* As:—

He loves your sister.

Q. *Whom does he love?* A. *Your sister.*

This case, in the plural, is always like the nominative, and in the singular the same rule is observed with the feminine and neuter.

Remark.—The prepositions an, auf, über, in, hinter, zwischen, govern the accusative when the verb implies a change of place:—

An das Fenster gehen. To go to the window.

In die Stadt schicken. To send into the town.

8. THE VOCATIVE. This case is called thus because it is used to *invoke* and to *address*: it is always like the nominative:—

Kutscher! komm her! Coachman, come here!

9. THE ABLATIVE—the sign of which is *from*,* is always formed by using the preposition *von* with the dative;

Ich habe es von dem Hofmeister I have received it from
bekommen. the governor.

Remark.—The ablative is expressed by *aus* with the dative when speaking of a place one comes out of:—

Ich gehe aus dem Garten. I go out of the garden.
Sie ist so eben aus der Kirche She is just come out
gekommen. of church.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE DECLENSIONS.

Grammarians are not agreed about the number of declensions the German nouns should be classed under, but as for all general purposes they may be ranged most conveniently under four, this plan has been adopted as the least embarrassing to the pupil, who may always apply afterwards to native works, should his inclination lead him to be a more critical German scholar.

10. THE FIRST DECLENSION comprises substantives which terminate in *el*, † *en*, and *er*. †

The *masculine* and *neuter* nouns of this declension take *s* in the genitive singular, and *n†* in the dative plural. The rest of the cases remain undeclined:—

*The signs of the Ablative are also, *concerning*, *about*, *by*, *with*, and frequently the English preposition *of* is rendered by the ablative, if the sense implies the before-mentioned meanings:—*Of whom do you speak?* *i. e.*, about whom, concerning whom, do you speak?

† Except those in *iel* and *ier*, which are of the second declension.

‡ Nouns in *en* remain unchanged in the dative plural.

SINGULAR.

| <i>Masculine Noun.</i> | <i>Neuter Noun.</i> |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| N. der Spiegel, the looking glass, | das Mädchen, the maiden, |
| G. des Spiegels, of the looking glass, | des Mädchens, of the maiden, |
| D. dem Spiegel, to the looking glass, | dem Mädchen, to the maiden, |
| A. den Spiegel, the looking glass; | das Mädchen, the maiden, |
| V. Spiegel, looking glass, | Mädchen, maiden, |
| Ab. von dem Spiegel, from the looking glass. | von dem Mädchen, from the maiden. |

Plural dative, den Spiegeln, to the looking glasses.

Remark.—Feminine nouns in all declensions are undeclined in the singular; in the plural, those in *el* and *er* take an *n* in all cases, (except *Mutter* and *Tochter*, which are declined like *Spiegel*.)

II. THE SECOND DECLENSION contains nouns that terminate in *al*, *all*, *ang*, *ig*, *ug*, *iel*, *ier*, *t*, *m*, *pf*, and others, of which a list will be given.

They take in the genitive singular *es* or *s*, and in the dative *e*.

In the plural they take an *e* in all cases, except the dative, which takes *en*, and the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, are modified,

As:—

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| N. der Canal, the canal, | die Canäle, the canals, |
| G. des Canals, of the canal, | der Canäle, of the canals, |
| D. den Canale, to the canal, | den Canälen, to the canals, |
| A. den Canal, the canal, | die Canäle, the canals, |
| V. Canal, canal, | Canäle, canals, |
| Ab. von dem Canale, from the canal. | von den Canälen, from the canals. |

Remark.—*Ha, Do*, in the plural are changed into *ä, ö* :
 der Saal, the hall, die Säle, the halls.

12. THE THIRD DECLENSION. Nouns of this declension terminate in *ant, at, dent, ist, (e,* eit, in, ley, rey, uhr, ung, and at.)*

They take in the genitive, and all the other cases both singular and plural, the termination *en †*; they never modify their vowels, and are almost all masculine or feminine:—

| | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|-----|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| N. | der Graf, the count, | die Grafen, the counts, |
| G. | des Grafen, of the count, | der Grafen, of the counts, |
| D. | dem Grafen, to the count, | den Grafen, to the counts, |
| A. | den Grafen, the count, | die Grafen, the counts, |
| V. | Graf, count, | Grafen, counts, |
| Ab. | von dem Grafen, from the count, | von den Grafen, from the counts. |

13. THE FOURTH DECLENSION. Almost all nouns of this declension are of the neuter gender, and terminate in *band, ch, mal, and thum.*

In the singular they are declined like the second declension, and in the plural they take *er* in all cases except the dative, which takes *ern*, and the vowels *a, o, u*, are modified:

| | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|-----|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| N. | das Band, the ribbon, | die Bänder, the ribbons, |
| G. | des Bandes, of the ribbon, | der Bänder, of the ribbons, |
| D. | dem Bande, to the ribbon, | den Bändern, to the ribbons, |
| Ac. | das Band, the ribbon, | die Bänder, the ribbons, |
| V. | Band, ribbon, | Bänder, ribbons, |
| Ab. | von dem Bande, from the ribbon. | von den Bändern, from the ribbons. |

* These are feminine.

† Except those nouns which end in the nominative singular in *e*, which only add *tt*.

14. Remarks.—COMPOUND NOUNS follow the declension of the last noun: as, *Haushater*.

Nouns that terminate in *in* double the *n* in their declension.

Nouns of the second declension in *e*, *ß*, *z*, *ß*, take *es* in the genitive singular.

Compound nouns with *mann* generally change that noun into *leute** for the plural:—

Der Kaufmann, the merchant. *Die Kaufleute*, the merchants.

15. CONTRACTIONS. The following are the chief contractions used in the German languages:—

| | | | |
|---------------|------------|-------------------|-------------|
| <i>Am</i> | instead of | <i>an dem,</i> | on the |
| <i>aufs</i> | „ | <i>auf das,</i> | upon the |
| <i>fürs</i> | „ | <i>für das,</i> | for the |
| <i>ins</i> | „ | <i>in das,</i> | in the |
| <i>vors</i> | „ | <i>vor das,</i> | before the |
| <i>übern</i> | „ | <i>über dem,</i> | over the |
| <i>untern</i> | „ | <i>unter dem,</i> | under the |
| <i>zum</i> | „ | <i>zu dem,</i> | to the |
| <i>ans</i> | „ | <i>an das,</i> | on the |
| <i>durchs</i> | „ | <i>durch das,</i> | through the |
| <i>im</i> | „ | <i>in dem,</i> | in the |
| <i>vom</i> | „ | <i>von dem,</i> | from the |
| <i>vorn</i> | „ | <i>vor dem,</i> | before the |
| <i>übers</i> | „ | <i>über das,</i> | over the |
| <i>widers</i> | „ | <i>wider das,</i> | against the |
| <i>zur</i> | „ | <i>zu der,</i> | to the |

16. ABBREVIATIONS.

| | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| <i>u. f. w.</i> | <i>und so weiter,</i> | and so on. |
| <i>u. a. m.</i> | <i>und andere mehr,</i> | and so forth. |
| <i>bergl.</i> | <i>bergleichen,</i> | the same. |

* *leute*, signifies *people*.

17. DIMINUTIVES. The terminations which form the German diminutives are *chen, lein, elchen* : they are all of the neuter gender, and always soften the vowels *a, o, u*, into *ä, ö, ü* :—

| | |
|--------------|--------------------------|
| Mann, man, | Männchen, little man. |
| Kind, child, | Kindlein, little child. |
| Buch, book, | Büchelchen, little book. |

18. CONSTRUCTION OF GERMAN. In compound tenses the case governed must be placed before the past participle:—

Ich habe den Mann gesehen I have seen the man.

Als, da, and some other conjunctions transpose the verb of the nominative to the end of the sentence, and the nominative to the second clause after the verb, as :—

Als er das gesagt hatte gab er mir. When he had said that, he gave me.

The nominative is also placed after the verb, when the sentence is inverted :—

Dem Manne habe ich es gegeben. I have given it to the man.

. For more rules see Rules for Construction.

19. THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Masculine.

WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

| | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------|--|--|
| Nom. | der Spiegel, the looking glass, | die Spiegel, the looking glasses, |
| Gen. | des Spiegels, of the looking glass, | der Spiegel, of the looking glasses, |
| Dat. | dem Spiegel, to the looking glass, | den Spiegeln, to the looking glasses, |
| Acc. | den Spiegel, the looking glass, | die Spiegel, the looking glasses, |

| | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------|---|--|
| Voc. | Spiegel, looking glass, | Spiegel, looking glasses, |
| Abl. | von dem Spiegel, from the looking glass. | von den Spiegeln, from the looking glasses. |

WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

| | |
|-----|--|
| N. | ein Spiegel, a looking glass, |
| G. | eines Spiegels, of a looking glass, |
| D. | einem Spiegel, to a looking glass, |
| A. | einen Spiegel, a looking glass, |
| Ab. | von einem Spiegel, from a looking glass. |

Feminine.

| | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|-----|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| N. | die Feder, the pen, | die Federn, the pens, |
| G. | der Feder, of the pen, | der Federn, of the pens, |
| D. | der Feder, to the pen, | den Federn, to the pens, |
| A. | die Feder, the pen, | die Federn, the pens, |
| V. | Feder, pen, | Federn, pens, |
| Ab. | von der Feder, from the pen. | von den Federn, from the pens. |

WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|----|------------------------|
| N. | eine Feder, a pen, | D. | einer Feder, to a pen, |
| G. | einer Feder, of a pen, | A. | eine Feder, a pen, |
| Ab. von einer Feder, from a pen. | | | |

N. B.—Recollect that Mutter and Tochter only take n in the *dative plural*, (page 11.)

Neuter.

| | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|-----|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| N. | das Mädchen, the maiden, | die Mädchen, the maidens, |
| G. | des Mädchens, of the maiden, | der Mädchen, of the maidens, |
| D. | dem Mädchen, to the maiden, | den Mädchen, to the maidens, |
| A. | das Mädchen, the maiden, | die Mädchen, the maidens, |
| V. | Mädchen, maiden, | Mädchen, maidens, |
| Ab. | von dem Mädchen, from the maiden. | von den Mädchen, from the maidens. |

WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

- N. ein Mädchen, a maiden,
 G. eines Mädchens, of a maiden,
 D. einem Mädchen, to a maiden,
 A. ein Mädchen, a maiden,
 Ab. von einem Mädchen, from a maiden.

Remark.—Some nouns of this declension soften the vowels a, o, u. The following are the principal:—

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| der Acker the field | die Acker* the fields |
| der Apfel the apple | die Äpfel the apples |
| der Boden the bottom | die Böden the bottoms |
| der Bogen the bow | die Bögen the bows |
| der Bruder the brother | die Brüder the brothers |
| der Faden the thread, | die Fäden the threads |
| der Garten the garden | die Gärten the gardens |
| der Graben the ditch | die Gräben the ditches |
| der Hammel the sheep | die Hammel the sheep |
| der Hammer the hammer | die Hämmer the hammers |
| der Laden the shop | die Läden the shops |
| der Magen the stomach | die Mägen the stomachs |
| der Mangel the defect | die Mängel the defects |
| die Mutter the mother | die Mütter the mothers |
| der Nabel the navel | die Nabel the navels |
| der Nagel the nail | die Nägel the nails |
| der Ofen the stove | die Ofen the stoves |
| der Schaden the damage | die Schäden the damages |
| der Schnabel the beak | die Schnäbel the beaks |
| der Schwager the brother-in-law | die Schwäger the brothers-in-law |
| die Tochter the daughter | die Töchter the daughters |
| der Vater the father | die Väter the fathers |
| der Vogel the bird | die Vögel the birds |

N.B.—Das Kloster is the only *neuter noun* of this declension that softens the vowel, as, die Klöster, the convents.

* Remember that capitals when softened, must have *ç* after them.

EXERCISE I.

Decline the following nouns, both with the definite and indefinite article:—

Der Engel, the angel; der Himmel, the heaven; der Esel, the ass; die Gabel, the fork; die Schachtel, the box; die Amsel, the blackbird; die Schwester, the sister; die Jungfer, the young lady; die Kammer, the room; der Degen, the sword; der Braten, the roast meat; der Laden, the shop; der Schlitten, the sledge; das Messer, the knife; das Fenster, the window; das Laster, the vice.

† At the end of the work the pupil will be introduced to more extensive practise on all the parts of speech, accompanied with explanatory notes; the grand object at first, particularly in a language like the German, is to become acquainted, as soon as possible, with the declensions and the conjugation of verbs.

20. THE SECOND DECLENSION.

(See Observations, page 11.)

Masculine.

| | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|-----|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| N. | der Canal, the canal, | die Canäle, the canals, |
| G. | des Canals* of the canal, | der Canäle, of the canals, |
| D. | dem Canale, to the canal, | den Canälen, to the canals, |
| A.† | den Canal, the canal, | die Canäle, the canals, |

WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

| | | | |
|----|---------------------------|-----|--------------------------|
| N. | ein Canal, a canal, | D. | einem Canal, to a canal, |
| G. | eines Canals, of a canal, | Ac. | einen Canal, a canal. |

*Or Canals.

†The vocative being always like the nominative, and the ablative like the dative with *VON*; those two cases will henceforth be omitted.

Thus are declined the following nouns :—

(See also *Observations*, No. 11.)

Remark.—Those marked with the asterisk do not change their vowel in the plural. In words of more than one syllable it is only the last vowel that is softened; as:—*der Vorhang*, *die Vorhänge*; and *aa* is changed into *ä*; as:—*der Saal*, *die Säle*.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>der Aal</i> * the eel | <i>der Thurm</i> the tower |
| <i>der Admiral</i> * the admiral | <i>der Traum</i> the dream |
| <i>der General</i> * the general | <i>der Zaum</i> the bridle |
| <i>der Cardinal</i> * the cardinal | <i>der Knopf</i> the button |
| <i>der Fall</i> the fall | <i>der Kopf</i> the head |
| <i>der Stall</i> the stable | <i>der Strumpf</i> the stocking |
| <i>der Wall</i> the rampart | <i>der Topf</i> the pot |
| <i>der Gesang</i> the canticle | <i>der Ast</i> the branch |
| <i>der Vorhang</i> the curtain | <i>der Bach</i> the rivulet |
| <i>der Honig</i> the honey | <i>der Band</i> the binding, the volume |
| <i>der König</i> the king | <i>der Bart</i> the beard |
| <i>der Krug</i> the jug | <i>der Bauch</i> the belly |
| <i>der Zeug</i> * the stuff | <i>der Brand</i> the torch |
| <i>der Zug</i> the draught | <i>der Brief</i> the letter |
| <i>der Fiedertiel</i> the quill | <i>der Dieb</i> the thief |
| <i>der Stiel</i> the handle | <i>der Dunst</i> the steam |
| <i>der Grenadier</i> the grenadier | <i>der Feind</i> the enemy |
| <i>der Offizier</i> the officer | <i>der Fisch</i> the fish |
| <i>der Blick</i> the look | <i>der Floh</i> the flea |
| <i>der Bod</i> the he-goat | <i>der Flor</i> the crape |
| <i>der Rod</i> the coat | <i>der Fluß</i> the river |
| <i>der Sack</i> † the sack | <i>der Freund</i> the friend |
| <i>der Arm</i> * the arm | <i>der Frosch</i> the frog |
| <i>der Baum</i> the tree | <i>der Fuß</i> the feet |
| <i>der Damm</i> the dyke | <i>der Gemahl</i> the husband |
| <i>der Ramm</i> the comb | <i>der Gebrauch</i> the use |
| <i>der Regenschirm</i> the umbrella | <i>der Stamm</i> the trunk of a tree |
| <i>der Stamm</i> the trunk of a tree | <i>der Gruß</i> the salute |

† The following in *ſ* are declined after the third declension:—*Der Katholik*, the Catholic; *der Kosack*, the Cossack; *der Kal-mud*, the Calmouc; *der Heiduck*, the Heiduc; *der Polack*, the Pole.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| der <i>Habicht*</i> the hawk | der <i>Schlaf</i> the sleep |
| der <i>Hahn</i> the cock | der <i>Schlag</i> the blow |
| der <i>Hals</i> the neck | der <i>Schlund</i> the abyss |
| der <i>Herzog</i> the earl | der <i>Schmauß</i> the banquet |
| der <i>Hieb</i> the blow or cut | der <i>Schuh*</i> the shoe |
| der <i>Hof</i> the court | der <i>Schuß</i> the shot |
| der <i>Hund*</i> the dog | der <i>Schwan</i> the swan |
| der <i>Hut</i> the hat | der <i>Schwanz</i> the tail |
| der <i>Knecht</i> the servant | der <i>Sieg</i> the victory |
| der <i>Koch</i> the cook | der <i>Sohn</i> the son |
| der <i>Korb</i> the basket | der <i>Sprung</i> the jump |
| der <i>Kranich*</i> the crane | der <i>Spion*</i> the spy |
| der <i>Krieg</i> the war | der <i>Staar*</i> the starling |
| der <i>Kuß</i> the kiss | der <i>Stand</i> the state |
| der <i>Lauf</i> the course | der <i>Stern</i> the star |
| der <i>Markt</i> the market | der <i>Stein</i> the stone |
| der <i>Monat*</i> the month | der <i>Stoff*</i> the stuff |
| der <i>Papst</i> the pope | der <i>Storch</i> the stork |
| der <i>Palast</i> the palace | der <i>Strauß</i> the ostrich |
| der <i>Weg*</i> the path | der <i>Strauch</i> the shrub |
| der <i>Wahl</i> the post | der <i>Stuhl</i> the chair |
| der <i>Wag</i> the place | der <i>Tag*</i> the day |
| der <i>Post Knecht*</i> the postilion | der <i>Tisch</i> the table |
| der <i>Punkt*</i> the point | der <i>Ton</i> the cask |
| der <i>Ranf</i> the border | der <i>Trog</i> the trough |
| der <i>Rath</i> the counsel | der <i>Wein</i> the wine |
| der <i>Ring</i> the ring | der <i>Wind</i> the wind |
| der <i>Saal</i> the room | der <i>Wolf</i> the wolf |
| der <i>Salat*</i> the salad | der <i>Zahn</i> the tooth |
| der <i>Sand*</i> the sand | der <i>Zaun</i> the hedge |
| der <i>Sarg</i> the coffin | der <i>Zoll</i> the toll |
| der <i>Schatz</i> the treasure | der <i>Zwang</i> the constraint |
| der <i>Schild</i> the buckler | |

Neuter.

| | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|-----|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| N. | das <i>Spiel</i> , the game, | die <i>Spiele</i> , the games, |
| G. | des <i>Spiels</i> , of the game, | der <i>Spiele</i> , of the games, |
| D. | dem <i>Spieler</i> , to the game, | den <i>Spielern</i> , to the games, |
| Ac. | das <i>Spiel</i> , the game. | die <i>Spiele</i> , the games. |

† *Strauß*, ostrich; makes *Strausse*, in the plural.

WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

ein Spiel, a game, einem Spiele, to a game,
eines Spieles, of a game. ein Spiel, a game.

List of neuter nouns of this declension :—

| | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| das Band* the tie | das Meer the sea |
| das Bein the leg | das Metall* the metal |
| das Bier the beer | das Papier the paper |
| das Brod the bread | das Pferd the horse |
| das Ding the thing | das Pfund* the pound |
| das Element the element | das Rohr* the reed |
| das Fell the skin | das Salz* the salt |
| das Geschwür the gathering | das Schaaf* the sheep |
| das Getränk the beverage | das Schiff the ship |
| das Gehirn the brain | das Schwein the swine |
| das Haar* the hair | das Seil the rope |
| das Heer the army | das Thier the animal |
| das Kameel the camel | das Thor* the gate |
| das Kreuz the cross | das Werk the work |
| das Loos* the lot | das Wort* the word |
| das Maas* the measure | das Ziel the aim. |

Remark.—Ding, creature, makes Dinger in the *plural*.

Feminine. †

Feminine nouns of this declension soften their vowel.

| | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|-----|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| N. | die Stadt, the town, | die Städte, the towns, |
| G. | der Stadt, of the town, | der Städte, of the towns, |
| D. | der Stadt, to the town, | den Städten, to the towns, |
| Ac. | die Stadt, the town, | die Städte, the towns. |

WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

| | | | |
|----|-------------------------|----|-------------------------|
| N. | eine Stadt, a town, | D. | einer Stadt, to a town, |
| G. | einer Stadt, of a town, | A. | eine Stadt, a town. |

† Remember that all feminine nouns are undeclined in the singular.

List of feminine nouns of the second declension :—

| | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| die Bank the bench | die Luft the air |
| die Braut the bride | die Macht the power |
| die Brust the breast | die Magd the female servant |
| die Faust the fist | die Maus the mouse |
| die Frucht the fruit | die Nacht the night |
| die Gans the goose | die Naht the seam |
| die Hand the hand | die Nuß the nut |
| die Haut the hide | die Sau the sow |
| die Kraft the strength | die Schnur the string |
| die Kuh the cow | die Wand the wall |
| die Kunst the art | die Wurst the sausage |
| die Lust the pleasure | die Zunft the guild |

EXERCISE II.

Decline the following nouns both with the definite and indefinite article :—

Der Brief, the letter ; der Herzog, the duke ; der Feind, the enemy ; der Freund, the friend ; der Admiral, the admiral ; das Pferd, the horse ; die Maus, the mouse ; der Spion, the spy ; der Palast, the palace ; die Kuh, the cow ; der Hund, the dog ; der Fuchs, the fox ; das Haar, the hair ; das Thier, the animal ; das Schaafe, the sheep ; das Kreuz, the cross.

21. THE THIRD DECLENSION.

(See also observations, page 12.)

The substantives of this declension do not soften their vowels :—

Masculine.

| | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| N. | der Graf, the earl, | die Grafen, the earls. |
| G. | des Grafen, of the earl, | der Grafen, of the earls, |
| D. | dem Grafen, to the earl, | den Grafen, to the earls, |
| A. | den Grafen, the earl, | die Grafen, the earls. |

WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

| | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| ein Graf, an earl, | einem Grafen, to an earl, |
| eines Grafen, of an earl, | einen Grafen, an earl. |

List of masculine nouns of this declension:—

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| der Komödiant* the comedian | der Buchstabe the letter (of the alphabet) |
| der Komunikant the communicant | der Deutsche the German |
| der Advokat the barrister | der Jude the Jew |
| der Ducat the ducat | der Knabe the boy |
| der Kandidat the candidate | der Student the student |
| der Soldat the soldier | der Präsident the president |
| der Affe the monkey | der Christ† the christian |

And the following:—

| | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| der Barbar‡ the barbarian | der Mensch§ man (in general) |
| der Bauer† the peasant | der Moor the Moor |
| der Bär the bear | der Monarch the monarch |
| der Eremit the hermit | der Narr the fool |
| der Fasan the pheasant | der Patriot the patriot |
| der Fels the rock | der Pfau the peacock |
| der Fürst the prince | der Philosoph the philosopher |
| der Held the hero | der Poet the poet |
| der Heyduc the heyduc | der Pole } the Pole |
| der Herr the master | der Polack } |
| der Huzar the huzzar | der Prinz the prince |
| der Calmuc the Calmuc | der Prophet the prophet |
| der Katholik the catholic | der Theolog the theologian |
| der Comet the comet | der Unterthan the subject |
| der Cossack the Cossack | der Thor the fool |
| der Leopard the leopard | der Vorfahr the ancestor |
| der Matrose the sailor | |

Remark.—Bauer only takes n in the plural, and in the singular like the first declension. Barbar, barbarian; Stiefel, boot; Doctor, doctor; Rector, rector; and Nachbar; are declined in the singular like the first declension; and in the plural like the third.

* See the termination of this declension (page 12.)

† See observations page 12.

‡ Geist, ghost, is of the fourth declension.

§ Mensch, is sometimes used as a term of contempt for Wench, and then its plural is Menschen.

Feminine.

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| N. die Schnalle, the buckle, | die Schnallen, the buckles, |
| G. der Schnalle, of the buckle, | der Schnallen, of the buckles, |
| D. der Schnalle, to the buckle, | den Schnallen, to the buckles, |
| A. die Schnalle, the buckle, | die Schnallen, the buckles. |

WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

| | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| eine Schnalle, a buckle, | einer Schnalle, to a buckle, |
| einer Schnalle, of a buckle, | eine Schnalle, a buckle. |

Feminine nouns of this declension almost all end in e, eit, in, ung, ur, &c.:—

| | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| die Kirche the church | die Gelegenheit the opportunity |
| die Schule the school | die Begebenheit the adventure |
| die Geige the violin | die Narrheit the folly |
| die Küche the kitchen | die Thorheit the silliness |
| die Wiege the cradle | die Zeit the time |
| die Tasche the pocket | die Fürstin the princess |
| die Wage the balance | die Gräfin the countess |
| die Klage the complaint | die Einsiedelei the hermitage |
| die Lüge the falsehood | die Schmeichelei the flattery |
| die Wunde the wound | die Betrügerei the deceit |
| die Stunde the hour | die Uhr the watch, clock |
| die Fliege the fly | die Kur the cure |
| die StraÙe the street | die Spur the trace |
| die Taube the pigeon | die Rechnung the account |
| die Krone the crown | die Zeitung the newspaper |
| die Pflanze the plant | die Universität the university. |
| die Feige the fig | |
| die Kutsche the coach | |
| die Krankheit the illness | |

Remark.—Words terminating in in, double n in their plural; as:—die Schäferin, the shepherdess; die Schäferinnen, plural the shepherdesses.

Neuter.

The few neuter nouns of this declension are declined in the singular like the second declension :—

| | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----|------------------------|-------------------------|
| N. | das Ohr, the ear, | die Ohren, the ears, |
| G. | des Ohres, of the ear, | der Ohren, of the ears, |
| D. | dem Ohre, to the ear, | den Ohren, to the ears, |
| A. | das Ohr, the ear, | die Ohren, the ears. |

WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

| | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| ein Ohr, an ear, | einem Ohre, to an ear, |
| eines Ohres, of an ear, | ein Ohr, an ear. |

Decline in the same manner—das Auge, the eye ; das Bett, the bed ; das Hemd, the shirt.

Remark.—Das Herz, the heart ; der Schmerz, the pain ; take in the genitive *ens*, and dative singular *en*.

EXERCISE III.

Decline the following nouns with the definite and indefinite article :—

Der Fürst, the prince ; der Arme, the poor ; der Deutsche, the German ; der Franzose, the Frenchman ; der Herr, the gentleman ; der Thor, the fool ; der Philosoph, the philosopher ; der Moor, the moor ; das Herz, the heart ; der Soldat, the soldier ; die Zeit, the time ; die Fürstin, the princess.

22. FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of this declension are almost all of the neuter gender ; they take *er* in the plural, and soften the vowels *a*, *o*, *u* : In the singular they are declined like the second declension.

Neuter.

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| N. das Band, † the ribbon, | die Bänder, the ribbons, |
| G. des Bandes, of the ribbon, | der Bänder, of the ribbons, |
| D. dem Bande, to the ribbon, | den Bändern, to the ribbons, |
| A. das Band, the ribbon, | die Bänder, the ribbons. |

WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

| | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| ein Band, a ribbon, | einem Bande, to a ribbon, |
| eines Bandes, of a ribbon, | ein Band, a ribbon. |

Thus are declined :—

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| das Achselband* the epaulet | das Faß the cask |
| das Strumpfband the garter | das Feld the field |
| das Buch the book | das Floß the rafter |
| das Dach the roof | das Gebet the prayer |
| das Fach the case | das Geld the money |
| das Gemach the apartment | das Gemüth the mind |
| das Loch the hole | das Geschlecht the generation |
| das Tuch the cloth | das Gesicht the face |
| das Schnupftuch the handkerchief | das Gespenst the ghost |
| das Handtuch the towel | das Gewand the habit |
| das Gastmahl the feast | das Gewölbe the vault |
| das Alterthum the antiquity | das Glas the glass |
| das Bisthum the bishoprick | das Glied the member |
| das Fürstenthum, the principality | das Grab the tomb |
| das Aas the carrion | das Gras the grass |
| das Amt the employment | das Gut the property |
| das Bad the bath | das Handwerk the trade |
| das Bild the image | das Haupt the head |
| das Blatt the leaf | das Haus the house |
| das Brett the board | das Holz the wood |
| das Dorf the village | das Horn the horn |
| das Ey the egg | das Huhn the chicken |
| | das Kabinet the cabinet |
| | das Kalb the calf |

† When Band means the binding of a book or volume, it makes Bände in the plural ; and when it means a tie, it makes Bande plural.

| | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| das Kamisol the waistcoat | das Pfand the pledge |
| das Kind the child | das Rad the wheel |
| das Kleid the coat | das Regiment the regiment |
| das Korn the corn | das Reis the branch |
| das Kraut the herb | das Schloß the castle, (the lock) |
| das Lamm the lamb | das Schwert the sword |
| das Land* the country | das Spital the hospital |
| das Licht the candle | das Thal the valley |
| das Lied the song | das Volk the people |
| das Maul the mouth of an animal | das Weib the woman |
| das Nest the nest | das Wort† the word |
| das Parlement the parliament | das Zelt the tent |

The few masculines are:—

| | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| der Gott the God | der Leib the body |
| der Irrthum the error | der Ort the place |
| der Reichthum the riches | der Wald the forest |
| der Geist the spirit | der Mann the man |

23. *Remark 1.*—Nouns compounded of mann are thus declined:—

| | |
|--|--|
| N. der Kaufmann, the mer- chant, | die Kaufleute, merchants, |
| G. des Kaufmannes, of the merchant, | der Kaufleute, of the mer- chants, |
| D. dem Kaufmanne, to the merchant, | den Kaufleuten, to the mer- chants, |
| A. den Kaufmann, the mer- chant. | die Kaufleute, the merchants. |

Decline in the same manner, der Hauptmann, the captain; der Edelmann, the nobleman; der Zimmermann, the carpenter; der Fuhrmann, the carrier; der Schiffmann, the boatman; der Amtmann, the bailiff.

* Land makes Lande in the plural, to signify countries of the same state; and Länder, countries in general.

† Single word, as mot in French.

2.—Mann, Fuß, Schuh, Buch, Pfund, are not declined when they are used to imply a certain quantity, as:—

Eine Compagnie von achtzig Mann, a company of eighty men.

| | |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| Zehn Fuß lang, | ten feet long. |
| Drei Buch Papier, | three quires of paper. |
| Vier Pfund Kaffee, | four pounds of coffee. |

EXERCISE IV.

Decline the following nouns both with the definite and indefinite article.

Das Buch, the book; das Dorf, the village; das Haus, the house; das Bild, the image; das Feld, the country; das Kalb, the calf; der Hauptmann, the captain; der Reichthum, the riches; der Ort, the place; der Wald, the forest.

24. DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

Proper names of *Countries, Towns, Villages, Rivers, and Mountains*, are thus declined:—

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| N. Rom, Rome, | A. Rom, Rome, |
| G. Rom's, of Rome, | V. Rom, O Rome, |
| D. Zu, nach, in Rom, to, in | Ab. von Rom, from Rome. |
| Rome, | |

Proper names of *Persons* of the masculine gender generally take an *s* in the genitive, and *en* in the *dative* and *accusative*, (except those in *r* which take only *n* in the *dative* and *accusative*)

| | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| N. Peter, Peter, | Heinrich, Henry, |
| G. Peter's, of Peter, | Heinrich's, of Henry, |
| D. Peter'n, to Peter, | Heinrich'en, to Henry, |
| A. Peter'n, Peter. | Heinrich'en, Henry. |

The names of Females in *a* and *e*, make in the genitive *en's*, in the *dative* and *accusative* *en*.

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| N. Maria, Mary, | Elizette, Eliza, |
| G. Mariens, of Mary, | Elizettens, of Eliza, |
| D. Marien, to Mary, | Elizetten, to Eliza, |
| A. Marien, Mary. | Elizetten, Eliza. |

And names in *s*, *ff*, *ß*, *sch*, *x*, and *z*.

Remark.—Some proper names cannot be declined, and then they take the definite article, as :—*der Daphnis, die Philis.*

EXERCISE V.

Decline the following proper names :—

Michael, Michael ; Catharine, Catharine ; Jacob, James ; Lissabon, Lisbon ; Friedrich, Frederick ; Johann, John ; Karl, Charles.

25. DECLENSION OF THE NOUN USED IN A PARTITIVE SENSE.

In German there is no partitive article, therefore, a noun takes no article, and is undeclined in the singular, when it expresses a portion of a whole, as :—

Give me some wine. Gebet mir Wein.

In the plural these nouns are thus declined :—

| | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| N. Weine, wines, | Leute, some people, |
| G. Weine, of wines, | Leute, of some people, |
| D. Weinen, to wines, | Leuten, to some people, |
| Ac. Weine, wines. | Leute, some people. |

APPENDIX.

26. OF THE GENDER OF GERMAN NOUNS AND THEIR FORMATION :—

Of the Gender of Nouns.

Although it would be more puzzling than useful to give complete rules for the gender of German nouns, yet some considerable assistance may be afforded by the following observations.

GENERAL RULES.

Animated beings whose sex is known by their occupation, are *masculine* or *feminine* as in English.

Except.—das Weib, das Frauenzimmer, woman, female; das Mädchen, the girl; das Fräulein, miss; das Mensch, the wench; die Mannsperson, das Mannsbild, the man, the male.*

Of the Masculine Gender are:—

The names of *winds, seasons, months, days, temperatures,* and *instruments* terminating in *er*.

Nouns that terminate in *en, er, ing, ling.*

Exceptions.—

| | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| die Hitze the heat | das Messer the knife |
| die Kälte the cold | das Ruder the rudder |
| die Mittwoche Wednesday | das Almosen the alms |
| die Klammer the cramp iron | das Kissen the cushion |
| die Leier the lyre | das Zeichen the sign |
| die Leiter the ladder | das Messing the brass |
| das Wetter the weather | das Becken the basin |
| das Jahr the year | das Wappen the weapon |

And all parts of speech used substantively, not being substantives by nature, are neuter, as:—

| | |
|------------------|----------------------|
| das Essen eating | das Trinken drinking |
|------------------|----------------------|

Of the Feminine Gender are:—

Nouns generally when they terminate in *e, ei, heit, keit, ur, schaft, ung,* and those derived from other languages in *ät, enz, it, ion.*

Exceptions.—

| | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| der Schaft the shaft | das Pestschaft, the seal |
|----------------------|--------------------------|

* The pupil should also refer to the lists which accompany the declensions, in combination with which, and these rules, he will not fail to acquire an extensive knowledge of this branch of the grammar.

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| der Brei the pap | der Hase the hare |
| der Affe the monkey | der Löwe the lion |
| der Drache the dragon | der Name the name |
| das Ei the egg | der Rabe the raven |
| der Falke the falcon | der Saame the seed |
| der Finte the finch | der Wille the will |
| der Friede the peace | der Buchstabe the letter (of the alphabet) |
| der Gedanke the thought | der GöÙe the idol |
| der Glaube the faith | |

Of the Neuter Gender are :—

1. The names of *Countries, Towns, and Villages*; except those in *ei*, as :— die *Turkei*, Turkey, and

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| die <i>Mark</i> , March | die <i>Lausitz</i> , Lausitia |
| die <i>Moldau</i> , Moldavia | die <i>Palz</i> , Palatinate |
| die <i>Krimm</i> , Crimea | die <i>Schweiz</i> Switzerland |
| | der <i>Haag</i> , the Hague. |

N.B.—The names of rivers are generally feminine, except der *Rhein*, der *Main*, der *Nekar*, and a few others.

2. The names of *Metals*, and the *letters of the Alphabet*, except :—

| | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| der <i>Stahl</i> the steel | die <i>Platina</i> , the platina |
| der <i>Lombard</i> the pinchbeck | der <i>Zink</i> the zinc |

3. All diminutives, abstract qualities, collectives, reiteratives, and those that merely denote the species without regard to sex : as,—

| | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| das <i>Männchen</i> the little man | das <i>Mädchen</i> the maiden |
| das <i>Kind</i> the child | das <i>Volk</i> the people |
| das <i>Geläute</i> the ringing | das <i>Gewölk</i> the clouds |
| das <i>Thier</i> the animal | das <i>Vieh</i> the cattle |
| das <i>Gute</i> what is good | das <i>Erhabene</i> what is elevated |

4. All words used substantively :—

| | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| das <i>Essen</i> , eating. | das <i>Lesen</i> , reading. |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|

5. Nouns beginning with *ge*, and not ending in *heit*, *feit*,

in, ung, ſchaft, except:—

| | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| der Gebrauch the use | die Gebühr the duty |
| der Gedanke the thought | die Geburt the birth |
| der Gehalt the contents | die Geduld the patience |
| der Gefallen the pleasure | die Gefahr the danger |
| der Genuß the enjoyment | die Gegend the country |
| der Geruch the smell | die Gegenwart the presence |
| der Gesang the song | die Geschwulst the tumour |
| der Geschmack the taste | die Gestalt the figure |
| der Gehorsam the obedience | die Gewalt the power |
| der Gewinn the gain | die Gemeinde the parish |
| die Geberde the gesture | die Geschichte the history |

6. Those that terminate in thum, except:—

der Reichthum, riches; der Irrthum, error; der Wachsthum, growth.

7. Those that end in niß, sal, sel, except:—

| | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| die Bedingniß the condition | die Erkenntniß the decision |
| die Bedrängniß the affliction | die Erlaubniß the permission |
| die Befugniß the authority | die Ersparniß the saving |
| die Bemannniß the sorrow | die Fäulniß the putrefaction |
| die Besorgniß the apprehension | die Finsterniß the darkness |
| die Betrübniß the affliction | die Kenntniß knowledge |
| die Bewandniß the circumstance | die Verdammniß the damnation |
| die Empfängniß the conception | die Verderbniß the corruption |
| die Trübsal the affliction | die Wildniß the wilderness |
| | die Veräumniß the omission |
| | der Stopfel the cork |

Gender of Compound Words.

In compound nouns the last determines the gender, as:—

| | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| das Arbeitshaus the workhouse | die Hausarbeit the housework |
| der Kirchhof the churchyard | die Hofkirche the court church |
| der Blumengarten the flower garden | die Gartenblume the garden flower |
| der Hausvater the father of the family | das Vaterhaus the paternal house |

Exceptions.—

| | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| der Abscheu the horror | die Neunauge the lamprey |
| die Antwort the answer | der Verhaft the arrest |
| der Mittwoch Wednesday | das Macherlohn pay for making |

And the following in *Muth* which are feminine :—

| | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| die Anmuth the gracefulness | die Langmuth the longanimity |
| die Armuth the poverty | die Sanftmuth the gentleness |
| die Demuth the humility | die Schwermuth the melancholy |
| die Großmuth the generosity | die Wehmuth the sadness |

27. ON THE FORMATION OF NOUNS.

Words are either *primitive* or *derivative*.

The *primitive* nouns are the roots themselves, and are generally monosyllables, as, *der Mann*, *die Hand*.

The *derivatives* are derived from another word; they are either *simple*, as *der Brand*, the conflagration, from *Brennen*, to burn, or *compound*, as *die Sprachlehre*, the grammar, from *Sprache*, language, and *die Lehre*, the instruction.

The German language, like the English, forms some nouns by adding certain terminations, the principal of which are *schaft*, *heit*, *keit*, *ung*, *en*, *ei*, *niss*, *thum*, *sal*, *er*, *den*, *lein*; as *Freundschaft*, friendship; *Finsterniss*, darkness. It also makes use of certain prefixes, such as, *ab*, *an*, *auf*, *aus*, *be*, *emp*, *ge*, *in*, *mit*, *über*, *ver*, *zer*, &c.

28. Diminutives are formed by adding *den* or *lein* to any noun, softening at the same time, the vowels *a*, *o*, or *u*, as, *der Mann*, the man; *das Männchen*,* the little man; and if the noun terminates in *ch* or *f*, the termination *elchen* is added, as:—

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| das Buch, the book, | das Büchelchen, the little book. |
| der Sack, the sack, | das Säckelchen, the little sack. |

* Remember that all diminutives are neuter.

29. In order to form the feminine from the masculine the termination *in* is added; as, *König*, king; *Königin*, queen; *der Schäfer*, the shepherd; *die Schäferin*, the shepherdess; *der Wolf*, the wolf; *die Wölfin*, the female wolf; *der Fran- zose*, the Frenchman; *die Französin*, the Frenchwoman.

Remark.—The vowel is not softened if the primitive is a proper name of a person:—

Herr Wolf, Mr. Wolf, *Frau Wolf*, Mrs. Wolf.

Nouns which are used under two sexes, as *Fisch*, fish; *Mensch*, mankind; *Vogel*, bird; and those that have a distinct word for each sex, do not admit of the above terminations; as, *das Pferd*, the horse; *der Hengst*, the stallion; *die Stute*, the mare.

30. When a derivative is composed of two or more words, that which determines its species, or is in the genitive, is expressed first; as, *der Kriegermann*, the warrior. Thus the same word has a different signification, according as it is placed first or last, as:—

der Straßenräuber, the street robber.
die Räuberstraße, the street of thieves.

The following examples will show how far the German language is able to carry the composition of words:—

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| | <i>die Stelle</i> , the place or situation, | |
| | <i>die Lieutenantsstelle</i> , the situation of lieutenant, | |
| <i>die Feldmarschalllieutenantsstelle</i> , | | Lieutenant field marshal. |
| <i>die Generalfeldmarschalllieutenantsstelle</i> , | | Lieutenant general field marshal. |
| <i>die Reichsgeneralfeldmarschalllieutenantsstelle</i> , | | The situation of lieutenant general field marshal of the kingdom. |

N.B. When the last termination in composition is common to two or more words which follow each other, it is cut off, and the different words of which the noun is composed are separated by hyphens :—

| | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| der Ein-und Ausgang, | The entrance and issue. |
| ein Sprach=Schreib=Kunst=und= | A master of languages, of |
| Tanzmeister, | writing, and of fencing. |

31.

ADJECTIVES.

The German adjective occupies the same place as in English, and remains unchanged if it does not immediately precede a noun, or is preceded by an article, as :—

| | |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| der Mann ist gut, | The man is good. |
| die Frau ist gut, | The woman is good. |
| die Kinder sind gut, | The children are good. |

Exceptions.—In the superlative degree or when a noun is understood the adjective is declined, as :—

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Mein ältester Sohn ist der Klein- | My eldest son is the smallest, |
| ste, und meine jüngste Toch- | and my youngest daughter |
| ter ist die größte, | is the tallest. |
| Die neuesten Bücher, sind zu- | The newest books are some- |
| weilen die schlechtesten, | times the worst. |

32. The adjective is declined and should agree in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, with the noun it qualifies, whether expressed or understood, if it be preceded by an article, or if it precedes the noun to which it refers, as :—

| | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| ein guter Mann, a good man | ein gutes Kind, a good child. |
| eine gute Frau, a good woman | die guten Männer, good men. |

33. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.*Masculine.*

| WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE. | WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE. |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| N. ein guter Vater, a good father, | der gute Vater, the good father, |
| G. eines guten Vaters, of a good father, | des guten Vaters, of the good father, |
| D. einem guten Vater, to a good father, | dem guten Vater, to the good father, |
| Ac. einen guten Vater, a good father. | den guten Vater, the good father. |

Feminine.

| | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| N. eine gute Mutter, a good mother, | die gute Mutter, the good mother, |
| G. einer guten Mutter, of a good mother, | der guten Mutter, of the good mother, |
| D. einer guten Mutter, to a good mother, | der guten Mutter, to the good mother, |
| Ac. eine gute Mutter, a good mother. | die gute Mutter, the good mother. |

Neuter.

| | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| N. ein gutes Kind, a good child, | das gute Kind, the good child, |
| G. eines guten Kindes, of a good child, | des guten Kindes, of the good child, |
| D. einem guten Kinde, to a good child, | dem guten Kinde, to the good child, |
| Ac. ein gutes Kind, a good child. | das gute Kind, the good child. |

Plural for all Genders.

| | | | |
|---------------|--------|---------|---------|
| N. die Guten, | Väter | Mütter | Kinder |
| G. der " | Väter | Mütter | Kinder |
| D. den " | Vätern | Müttern | Kindern |
| A. die " | Väter | Mütter | Kinder |

Remarks.—1. By the foregoing may be seen that when the noun preceded by an adjective takes the indefinite article, the nominative *singular* of the *adjective* takes *er* for the masculine, *e* for the feminine, and *es* for the neuter; but if it be used with the *definite article*, the *nominative singular* takes *t* for all genders.

2. The other cases take *en* for the three genders, except the accusative of the *feminine* and *neuter*, which is always like the nominative.

3. All the cases in the plural make the adjective to end in *en*.

4. If instead of an article there be a *possessive pronoun* before the adjective, the adjective is then declined in the singular the same as after *ein, eine, ein*, and in the plural as with the article *die* :

| | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| Mein guter Freund, | Meine guten Freunde, |
| Meines guten Freundes, | Meiner guten Freunde. |

34. The Germans use the noun without any article when *some* or *any* is expressed or understood in English, or when the latter noun is governed by the former, as:—

das ist guter Wein, that is good wine.
 ein Glas guten Weins, a glass of good wine.
 gute Freunde, good friends.

35. And then the adjective is declined as follows:—

| | <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> |
|----|------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| N. | guter Wein, good wine, | gute Suppe, good soup, | gutes Wasser, good water, |
| G. | guten Weins, | guter Suppe, | guten Wassers, |
| D. | gutem Weine, | guter Suppe, | gutem Wasser, |
| A. | guten Wein, | gute Suppe. | gutes Wasser. |

Plural for all genders.

| | | |
|----|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| N. | gute Weine, Suppen, etc., | good wines, soups, &c., |
| G. | guter Weine, Suppen, | of good wines, soups, &c., |
| D. | guten Weinen, Suppen, | to good wines, soups, &c., |
| A. | gute Weine, Suppen, | good wines, soups, &c. |

36. When an adjective is used substantively it is declined with the definite or indefinite article, the same as if the noun were expressed :—

der *Reisende*, the traveller, ein *Reisender*, a traveller .

37. *Remark.*—Some German substantives derived from the name of the *Country, Town, Village, &c.*, end in *er*, and are declined after the 1st declension. *Examples* :—

ein *Brabanter*, a native of Brabant, (from *Brabant*.)
der *Frankfurter*, the native of Frankfort, &c.

38. But what must appear singular, is, that if the above are used adjectively with a noun, they remain undeclined, as :—

der *Hamburger Kaufmann*, the Hamburg merchant,
die *Hamburger Kaufleute*, the Hamburg merchants,
des *Hamburger Kaufmannes*, of the Hamburg merchant.

EXERCISE VI.

Mr. D. has a handsome wife, a fine house, and a very fine garden; he has also handsome sisters, very good wine, and a great many flatterers. A handsome gentleman said to the youngest sister of the rich Mr. A., "Beautiful girls resemble beautiful flowers; and beautiful flowers resemble beautiful girls: both wither with time." "Fine gentlemen, also," she replied. The rich inhabitants of the large towns, are less happy than the poor peasants imagine. There are poor people, who are, to a certain degree, happier than the rich. I have seen in Switzerland some small villages, where still reigns the golden age. Berlin is a large city, where there are some large houses, magnificent churches, pretty gardens, and very rich people; but there are also many poor as everywhere else.

EXPLANATIONS.

Has, hat; handsome, schön; wife, Frau; house, Haus (ä,* er); and, und; very, sehr; the garden, der Garten (ä); also, auch; sister, Schwester; a great many, sehr viele; flatterer, Schmeichler; gentleman, Herr (en); said, sagte; to, zu (*dative*); young, jung; youngest, jüngste; rich, reich; resemble, gleichen (*dative*); beautiful, hübsch; a flower, eine Blume (n.); both, beide; wither, verwelken; with or in time, mit der Zeit; also, auch; she replied, erwiderte sie; inhabitant, Einwohner; large, groß; town, Stadt (ä, e); are less happy, sind nicht so glücklich; than, als; poor, arm; peasant, Bauer (n.); imagine, es glauben; There are, es gibt; people, Leute; who are in a certain degree more happy, welche in gewissem Betrahte glücklicher sind; I have seen, Ich habe—gesehen†; in Switzerland, in der Schweiz; village, Dorf (ö, er); where reigns still, worin noch—herrsch†; the golden age, das goldene Zeitalter; where there are, worin sich befinden; magnificent, prächtig; a church, eine Kirche (n.); but, aber; pretty, artig; but there are also many, aber es gibt auch da viele; as everywhere else, wie überall.

EXERCISE VII.

John, I told you to bring me some good plums, some large nuts, and some fine apples, but you have not done it. There were no better ones, Sir. Have you been to the French cook and the English physician? Yes, Sir; but

* The termination after a noun shows its plural, and when the vowel is to be softened, as:—Haus, singular; Häuser, plural.

† The dash denotes that all words governed by the verb should be placed there.

they were not at home. Is there not a ball in the red house. There are two Italian singers. There are a great many fools in the world who do not believe themselves to be so. I know among others a certain fool who generally wears a brown coat, a red waistcoat, and a black wig. They say that few strangers like the Frankfort manner of cooking. Spaniards as well as Livonians are very fond of Champaign and Tokay wine. The Heidelberg students have the reputation of being very studious. The country of Austria is one of the best and most fertile of Germany. In London, I have a great many acquaintances among the Irish. In Holland they cure quills very well. The generality of the English are more serious than the French. That gentleman sold us some Lyons silk.

EXPLANATIONS.

John, Johann; I told you, ich habe euch gesagt; to bring me, ihr solltet mir—bringen; the plum, die Pflaume (*n.*); die Zwetsche (*n.*); a large nut, eine grosse Nuß (*ü. c.*); the apple, der Apfel (*ac.*); but you have not done it, aber ihr habt es nicht gethan; there were no better ones, es waren keine besseren da; have you been, seyd ihr—gewesen; to, bei (*dat.*); French, Französisch; cook, Koch; English, Englisch; physician, Arzt; they were not at home, sie waren nicht zu Hause; the ball, der ball; red, roth; there are, da sind; Italian, italienisch; singer, Sängerin, *f.* (*en.*); there are a great many, es gibt viele; fool, Narr (*en.*); in the world, auf der Welt; who do not believe to be so, die es nicht zu seyn glauben; I know, ich kenne; certain, gewiß; who generally wears, welcher gewöhnlich trägt; brown, braun; the coat, das Kleid (*cr.*); red, roth; waistcoat, das Wilet; black,

schwarz; wig, die Perrücke (n.); they say, man sagt; that, daß; few strangers, wenige Fremde; the Frankfort manner of cooking, say the Frankfort kitchen, die Frankfurter Kocherei, or Kochkunst; the Spaniard, der Spanier, (from Spanien); Livonia, Liefland; are very fond of, trinken gern; Champaign and Tokay wine, der Champagner und Tokayer Wein; the Heidelberg student, der Heidelberger Student (en.); have the reputation, haben den Ruf, or stehen im Rufe; to be very studious, daß sie sehr fleißig sind; the country, das Land (ä. er.); Austria, Oesterreich; the best and the most fertile, das beste und fruchtbarste; one of the, einß der (*gen pl.*); Germany, Deutschland; in London, zu or in London; I have, habe ich; a great many acquaintances, viele Bekanntschaft; Irish, Irländer; they cure very well, bereit man—sehr gut zu; the quill, der Federkiel (c.); the generality of the English are, der meiste Theil der Engländer sind, or die meisten Engländer sind; serious, ernsthaft; that gentleman sold us, dieser Herr hat uns verkauft; silk, Seide.

DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

39. The degrees of comparison are formed in a similar manner to those in English, viz:—*er* is added to the positive to form the comparative, and *st* for the superlative; examples:

| <i>Positive.</i> | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Gering, small | Geringer, smaller | der Geringste, the smallest |
| Klein, little | Kleiner, smaller | der Kleinste, the smallest |

40. *Remark.*—Adjectives in *el* omit the *e* in the comparative, as:—*edel*, noble; *edler*, instead of *edeler*, more

noble ; and if the termination *st* in the superlative, produce too harsh a sound, *est* is used, as :—

| | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Beherzt, courageous | Beherzter, more courageous | der Beherzteste, most courageous |
| Gelind, gentle | Gelinder, more gentle | der Gelindeste, most gentle |

41. In general the vowels, *a, o, u*, are softened in the comparative and superlative degrees ; as,—

| <i>Positive.</i> | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative.</i> |
|------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Alt, old | älter | der älteste |
| Arm, poor | ärmer | der ärmste |
| Fromm, pious | frömmter | der frömmste |
| Groß, great | größer | der größte |
| Gesund, healthy | gesünder | der gesündeste |
| Stumm, crooked | krümmter | der krümmste |

Exceptions—

42. The vowels *a, o, u*, are not softened if they are not found in the original word or root of the adjective ; as, *Arbeitsam*, laborious ; *arbeitsamer*, more laborious ; (from *die Arbeit*, work.) *Herzhaft*, courageous ; *herzhafter*, more courageous ; (from *das Herz*, the heart) and the following :

| | | |
|------------------|-----------|-----------------|
| Bunt, piebald | bunter | der bunteste |
| Gerad, straight | gerader | der geradeste |
| Gottlos, impious | gottloser | der gottloseste |
| Hohl, hollow | höher | der höhlste |
| Lahn, lame | lahmer | der lahmste |
| Rund, round | runder | der rundeste |
| Sanft, soft | sanfter | der sanfteste |
| Schlant, slender | schlanter | der schlankste |
| Schlaff, slack | schlaffer | der schlaffeste |
| Stumm, dumb | stummer | der stummste |
| Tapfer, valiant | tapfer | der tapferste |
| Toll, mad | toller | der tollste |
| Zahn, tame | zähmer | der zähmste |

To which are added adjectives in *ar* ; as—

| | | |
|------------|-------------|------------------|
| Wunderbar, | wunderbarer | der wunderbarste |
|------------|-------------|------------------|

43. Some adjectives and adverbs have a particular form :—

| | | |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| Bald, soon | eher, sooner | am ehesten, soonest |
| Gern, willingly | lieber, rather | am liebsten, the rather |
| Gut, good | besser, better | der beste, the best |
| Viel, much | mehr, more | der meiste, the most |

44. *Remark.*—The adverb gut, (well,) makes besser, better ; am besten, the best.

The adjective and adverb Wenig, few, little ; weniger, less ; der wenigste, or am wenigsten, the least.

Less before an adjective is expressed by nicht so ; and the least by der or die minder :—

Less poor, nicht so arm. The least handsome, der minder schöne

45. Nahe, near ; and hoch, high ; are thus formed :—

| | | |
|------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| Nahe, near | näher, nearer | der nächste, the nearest |
| Hoch, high | höher, higher | der höchste, the highest |

46. When the adjectives compared are used with the article they are thus expressed :—

| | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| der reiche, | der reichere, | der reichste |
| the rich | the richer | the richest |
| die gnädige, | die gnädigere, | die gnädigste, |
| the gracious | the more gracious | the most gracious |
| das glückliche, | das glücklichere, | das glücklichste, |
| the happy | the more happy | the happiest |

47. The term *than* is expressed by als, after a comparative ; and *as* by wie.

EXERCISE VIII.

Nankin, in China, is considered the largest town in the world. Berlin is larger than Hamburg, Paris larger than Berlin, and Constantinople is the largest city in Turkey. Germany is more peopled than Russia ; France is more

peopled than England ; and the island of Malta is one of the most populous countries in the world.

The elephant is the largest of all quadrupeds. The ostrich is the largest of all birds. The humming-bird is the smallest and one of the prettiest birds known ; and the whale is the largest fish of the sea.

Our servant is stupid, more stupid than our coachman, who is the most stupid of all servants I know. His father was the biggest countryman, and his mother the leanest countrywoman I have ever seen. He came often to town, oftener than his wife. My grapes are good, but yours are better ; and those we have here are the best of all grapes, because your sister has given them to us. She is the best girl in the world. The wife of my shoemaker thinks herself handsome, handsomer than her sister, who would be the handsomest woman in the town if she were not so affected.

EXPLANATIONS.

Is considered, wird für—gehalten ; in the world, auf der Welt ; Constantinople, Constantinopel ; in, von ; peopled or inhabited, volkreich ; Russia, Rußland ; France, Frankreich ; the island, die Insel ; the earth, die Erde ; the quadruped, das vierfüßige Thier ; of all quadrupeds, von allen vierfüßigen Thieren ; the ostrich, der Strauß ; the bird, der Vogel (♂) ; the humming-bird, der Fliegenvogel ; known, die man kenne ; the whale, der Wallfiß (e.) ; our, unser ; servant, Knecht ; coachman, Kutscher ; who, der ; I know, die ich kenne ; his, sein (m.), seine (f.) ; big, dieß ; countryman, Bauer (n.) ; lean, mager ; countrywoman, Bäuerin (nen.) ; I have ever seen, die ich in meinem Leben gesehen habe ; he came, er kam ;

often, oft; to town, in die Stadt; his wife, seine Frau; My grapes, meine Trauben; are, sind; yours, die Ihrigen; those we have here, diejenigen welche wir hier haben; because your sister has given them to us, weil Ihre Jungfer Schwester sie uns gegeben hat; of my, meines; shoemaker, Schuhmacher; thinks herself, glaubt sie wäre, or daß sie—wäre; who would be, welche—seyn würde; if she were not so affected, wenn sie sich nicht so ätzte.

48.

NUMBERS.

There are five kinds of numbers:—1. CARDINAL NUMBERS; 2. ORDINAL NUMBERS; 3. PROPORTIONAL NUMBERS; 4. DISTRIBUTIVE NUMBERS; and 5. COLLECTIVE NUMBERS.

THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

| | | | |
|----|---------------|----|--------------------|
| 0 | Null (en) | 19 | Neunzehn |
| 1 | Einß or (Ein) | 20 | Zwanzig |
| 2 | Zwei * | 21 | Ein und Zwanzig |
| 3 | Drei | 22 | Zwei und Zwanzig |
| 4 | Vier | 23 | Drei und Zwanzig |
| 5 | Fünf | 24 | Vier und Zwanzig |
| 6 | Sechs | 25 | Fünf und Zwanzig |
| 7 | Sieben | 26 | Sechs und Zwanzig |
| 8 | Acht | 27 | Sieben und Zwanzig |
| 9 | Neun | 28 | Acht und Zwanzig |
| 10 | Behn | 29 | Neun und Zwanzig |
| 11 | Elf (Elf) | 30 | Dreißig |
| 12 | Zwölf | 31 | Ein und Dreißig |
| 13 | Dreizehn | 32 | Zwei und Dreißig |
| 14 | Vierzehn | 33 | Drei und Dreißig |
| 15 | Fünfzehn | 34 | Vier und Dreißig |
| 16 | Sechszehn | 35 | Fünf und Dreißig |
| 17 | Sieb(en)zehn | 40 | Vierzig |
| 18 | Achtzehn | 41 | Ein und Vierzig |

| | | | |
|----|----------------------|-----------|--|
| 42 | Zwei und Bierzig | 81 | Ein und Achtzig |
| 50 | Fünzig (Fünfzig) | 82 | Zwei und Achtzig |
| 51 | Ein und Fünzig | 90 | Neunzig |
| 52 | Zwei und Fünzig | 91 | Ein und Neunzig |
| 53 | Drei und Fünzig | 92 | Zwei und Neunzig |
| 60 | Sechzig | 100 | Hundert |
| 61 | Ein und Sechzig | 150 | Hundert und Fünzig (Anderthalb hundert) |
| 62 | Zwei und Sechzig | | |
| 70 | Sieb(en)zig | 200 | Zwei Hundert |
| 71 | Ein und Sieb(en)zig | 1,000 | Tausend |
| 72 | Zwei und Sieb(en)zig | 2,000 | Zwei Tausend |
| 80 | Achtzig | 1,000,000 | Eine Million |

49. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

| | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| Der, die, das, the | Neunte, ninth |
| Erste, first | Zehnte, tenth |
| Zweite, second | Elfte, eleventh |
| Dritte, third | Zwanzigste, twentieth |
| Vierte, fourth | Hundertste, hundredth |

Remark.—The above are formed from the cardinal numbers, by adding *te*, (except *erste* and *dritte*), from one to nineteen; and *ste* from twenty to the highest number.

50. DECLENSION OF NUMERICALS.

The Ordinal numbers are declined like adjectives; but the Cardinal numbers are undeclinable, except *Ein*, *zwei*, *drei*, if they are not preceded by an article, a possessive or demonstrative pronoun.

Ein is declined like the indefinite article, (see No. 3.)

Zwei and *Drei* are declined as follows:—

| | | |
|----|-----------------------|------------------|
| N. | Zwei,* two | Drei, three |
| G | Zweier, of two | Dreier, of three |
| D. | Zweien, to two | Dreien, to three |
| A. | (like the nominative) | |

* Formerly *Zweien* was used for the masculine, and *Zwo* for the feminine.

Examples.

Die Borgegebene Unschuld The pretended innocence of
Zweiter Diebe. two thieves.

51. Remark.—The other Cardinal numbers are declined when they are used without any article, and refer to a noun understood but not expressed :—*

| | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| Ich widerstehe Sechsen | I oppose six |
| Er redete mit Zwanzigen | He conversed with twenty |
| Sie gingen zu Bierern | They walked four in a row |
| Von Bierern Einer | One from four |

52. When the Ordinal number is used after the name of a Sovereign it must agree with it in case, as :—

| | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| König Heinrich der vierte | King Henry the fourth |
| Des Königs Heinrichs des vierten | Of King Henry the fourth |

53. The Fractional numbers always precede the object counted, as :—

| | |
|--|------------------------|
| Anderthalb Pfund (ein und ein Halb Pfund) | A pound and a half |
| Dritthalb Thaler (zwei und ein halber Thaler) | Two dollars and a half |
| Biertelhalb. | Three and a half |

54. To express the hour of the day, the numbers may simply be used in the neuter gender :—

| | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| Es schlägt eins, | It strikes one o'clock |
| Ein viertel auf zwei, | A quarter past one |
| Halb vier, | Half-past three |

55. They say in German, der Zehnte, der Hunderte, &c. weiß es nicht, out of ten, out of a hundred, &c., not one knows it.

* But if the noun be expressed, they would remain undeclined :—Dieses geschieht unter vier Augen, That is done between two persons.

56. PROPORTIONAL VARIATIVE AND REITERATIVE NUMBERS.

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Einfaoh, einfältig, single | Einmal, once |
| Zweifach, zweifältig, two-fold | Zweimal, twice |
| Dreifach, three-fold | Dreimal, three times |
| Zehnfach, ten-fold | Zweierlei, of two sorts |
| Hundertfach, a hundred-fold | Hunderterlei, of a hundred sorts |
| | Mancherlei, many sorts |
| | Allerlei, allsorthand, sundry, of all sorts |

57. DISTRIBUTIVE, SUBSTANTIVE, AND ADVERBIAL NUMBERS.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Erstens, in the first place | die Hälfte, the half |
| Erstlich, half | Halb, half |
| Zweitens, in the second place | das Drittel, the third part |
| Drittens, thirdly | das Viertel, a quarter |
| Viertens, fourthly | das Fünftel, a fifth |
| Je zwei und zwei, two and two | Einzel, je ein und ein, singly |
| Je drei und drei; three and three | Vaarweise, by pairs |
| Einerlei, of one sort | Duzendweise, by dozens |
| Zweierlei, of two sorts | |

58. COLLECTIVE NUMBERS. &c.

| | |
|------------------------------|---|
| ein Paar, a pair | ein Vierteljahr, a quarter of a year |
| ein Duzend, a dozen | ein Vierteljahr, a quarter of a hundred |
| ein Mandel, fifteen | ein Viertelpfund, a quarter of a pound |
| ein Hundert, a hundred | das Tausend, a thousand |
| das Pfund, the pound | das Schod, number of three score |
| das Jahrhundert, the century | |

EXERCISE IX.

Twice two make four; twice three make six; twice four make eight; twice five make ten; twice six make twelve; twice ten make twenty. I bought to day three

houses for thirty thousand florins ; two gardens for seven thousand crowns ; and five horses for two hundred and thirty florins. I should not have been able to have bought all that, if I had not won the high prize of a hundred thousand florins.

A man who weighs a hundred pounds, has generally four pounds of brains ; there is no animal that has so much. An ox of eight to nine hundred weight has but one pound of brains.

Astronomers pretend that the sun is a million times larger than the earth, and that if a cannon ball went from the earth, up to the sun, and continually preserved its first rapidity, it would require twenty five years to arrive there.

The sun passes through the twelve signs of the Zodiac in three hundred and sixty five days, six hours, less eleven-minutes.

America was discovered in the year 1492. Gunpowder was discovered by a monk, in the year 1382.

Paris with its twelve suburbs, is five leagues in circumference. What is it o'clock ; Half-past six.

EXPLANATIONS.

Make, *ist* ; I bought to day, *ich habe heute gekauft* ; for *für* ; a florin, *ein Gulden* ; a crown, *ein Thaler* ; I should not have been able, *ich würde nicht im Stande gewesen seyn* ; to have bought all that, *alles dieses zu kaufen* ; if I had not won, *wenn ich nicht—gewonnen hätte* ; the high prize, *das grosse Loos* ; of, *von* ; who weighs, *welcher—wiegt* ; the pound, *das Pfund* ; has generally, *hat gewöhnlich* ; of brains, *Gehirn* ; there is no animal that has so much, *kein Thier hat dessen so viel* ; the ox, *der Ochs* (en.) ; the hundred weight, *der zentner* ;

has but, hat nur; the Astronomer, der Sternkundige (n.); pretend, behaupten; that, daß; the sun, die Sonne; is—times larger, mal grösser ist; a cannon ball, eine Kanonenkugel (n.); that if—went from the earth to the sun, —die von der Erde nach der Sonne abginge; and continually preserved its first rapidity, und beständig ihre erste Geschwindigkeit beibehielt; would require, —brauchen würde; to arrive there, bis sie dahin käme or (um dahin zu kommen); passes through, durchläuft; the signs of the Zodiac, die Zeichen des Thierkreises; day, der Tag (e.); the hour, die Stunde; less, weniger; the minute, die Minute (n.); America, Amerika; was discovered, wurde entdeckt; in the year, im Jahre; Gunpowder, das Schießpulver; was discovered (invented), wurde—erfunden; a monk, ein Mönch (e.); with its—suburbs, mit ihren—Vorstädten; in circumference, im Umfange; What is it o'clock? Wieviel Uhr ist es? or, Was ist die Uhr?

PRONOUNS.

59. DECLENSION OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

| <i>Singular.</i> | | <i>Plural.</i> | |
|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| FIRST PERSON. | | SECOND PERSON. | |
| N. ich, I | wir we | du, thou | ihr, you |
| G. meiner, of me | unsrer, of us | deiner, of thee | eurer, of you |
| D. mir, to me | uns, to us | dir, to thee | euch, to you |
| A. mich, me | uns, us | dir, thee | euch, you |
| THIRD PERSON. | | | |
| <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> | <i>Plural for all Genders.</i> |
| N. er, he | sie, she | es, it | sie, they |
| G. seiner, of him | ihrer, of her | seiner, of it | ihrer, of them |
| D. ihm, to him | ihr, to her | ihm, to it | ihnen, to them |
| A. ihn, him | sie, her | es, it | sie, them |

60. N.B. The reciprocal Pronoun *sich* has no nominative, and is thus declined :—

| | | | |
|--|------------|----------------|---------------|
| G. <i>seiner, m. & n., ihrer, f.</i> | of oneself | <i>ihret</i> , | of themselves |
| D. <i>sich, " "</i> | to oneself | <i>sich</i> , | to themselves |
| A. <i>sich, " "</i> | oneself | <i>sich</i> , | themselves |

OBSERVATIONS.

61. The Place of the Personal Pronoun in the *nominative* is the same as in English, as :—

Ich habe, I have, *Habe ich* ? have I ?

Except in inverted construction, when it is placed after the verb in the second clause, as :—

Wenn er reich wäre, würde er nicht zufriedener seyn, If he were rich he would be more contented.

The *accusative* and *dative* personal pronouns follow the same rule as nouns : (*see Construction.*)

| | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Ich</i> habe es, | I have it. |
| <i>Ich</i> habe es gehabt, | I have had it. |
| <i>Er</i> sprach zu mir, | He spoke to me. |
| <i>Er</i> hat zu mir gesprochen, | He has spoken to me. |
| <i>Als</i> er ihn sah, | When he saw him. |

62. *German etiquette* requires that the pronoun referring to the person addressed should begin with a capital, as :—

Guter Freund, konnet *S*hr mir nicht sagen, Good friend can you not tell me.

And in addressing one person sometimes we use :—

1. The second person singular,
2. The second person plural,
3. The third person singular,
4. The third person plural,

According to the following rules :—

63. The Germans use the *second person singular* (du, thou) in addressing the *Deity, great Lords in Poetry, their children, brothers, sisters, an intimate friend, a confidential servant, and people of the lower classes* :—

Gott! auf Dich allein hoffe ich, God! in thee alone is my trust;
 Du wirst mich erretten, thou wilt deliver me.
 Mein lieber Sohn, ich mache Dir My dear son, I inform you
 mit diesen Zeilen bekannt, &c. with these lines.
 Bruder, hast Du es gesehen? Brother, hast thou seen it?
 Meine liebe Schwester, hast Du? My dear sister, hast thou?
 Lieber Freund, warum hast Du My dear friend, why hast thou
 es nicht gesagt? not said it?
 Johann, wo hast Du es hin- John, where have you put it?
 gelegt?
 Gehe, du bist ein schlechter Away with you, you are a bad
 Mensch, fellow.

64. They use the *second person plural* (ihr, you) in addressing a *servant or any other person to whom they wish to show neither familiarity nor civility*; thus, in speaking to a countryman :—

Guter Freund, können Ihr mir Good man, could you not tell
 nicht sagen, wo, &c. ? me, where ?

65. They use the *third person singular* (er, he; sie, she,) if they *wish to show some civility to an inferior*; thus, in speaking to the servant of another person :—

Sei Er so gut und sage Er Be so kind as to tell your
 seinem Herrn, &c., master.
 Jungfer, dienet Sie nicht bei Miss, are you not in the
 der Frau Wolf, service of Mrs. Wolf.

66. They use the *third person plural* (*Sie, they*) when addressing* *superiors* or *equals*, to whom they wish to show some respect or politeness :—

Gnädiger Herr, ich bitte Sie, My lord, I pray you to grant
mir die Gnade zu erzeigen, me the favour.

Mein Herr (or Madam) Sie Sir (or Madam) you will
werden mir eine große Ehre confer upon me a great
erzeigen, honour.

Remark.—The best way to acquire the manner of addressing persons in the third person, is to imagine that you are speaking of them.

67. *Myself, Thyself, &c.*, are expressed by *selbst*; *ich selbst*, I myself; *er selbst*, he himself; *wir selbst*, &c., as :—

Er hat es selbst gesagt, He has said it himself

Sie hat mir es† selbst gegeben, She has given it me herself

68. The preposition *wegen*, on account of, may precede or follow the genitive; if it follows, the *r* of the genitive is changed into *t*, and the pronoun is joined to *wegen*; *halben, um*—*will*, follow the same rule :—

Wegen meiner, On my account

Wegen deiner, &c., On thy account

Meinetwegen, meinethalben, On my account
um meinethalben,

Deinetwegen, deinethalben, &c., On thy account

Seinetwegen, seinethalben, &c., On his account

Unserwegen, unserthalben, &c., On our account

Eurewegen, eurethalben, &c., On your account

Ihretwegen, ihretthalben, &c., On your account

* The same in the plural: *Wo gehen Sie hin, meine Herren und Damen?* Where are you going to Gentlemen and Ladies?

† The pronouns in the accusative *es, ihn, si?*, generally precede the dative, as :—*Er gab es mir*, He gave it to me.

EXERCISE X.

Do you know Miss D. ? Yes, Sir, I know her. She promised to come and see me to day ; but I do not think (that) she will come. Have you seen her to day ? Yes, Sir, I have had the pleasure of seeing her ; but she has not seen me ; and I was very sorry for it. I will tell her one day that you told me that. Pray do not tell her that, for she should not know it.

How is your father ? He is pretty well. Give my compliments to him, if you please. I thank you ; I will not fail.

Mr. R. wrote to me lately, that his sisters were coming here in a short time, and begged me to let you know it. Thus, you will be able to give (to) them the books which you bought ; they hope you will make them a present of them. Their brother has assured me that they love and esteem you, without knowing you personally.

Henry have you carried Mr. G. his boots ? Yes, Sir, I have carried them to him. What did he tell you ? He said nothing to me.

EXPLANATIONS.

Do you know, kennen (kennen) ; Miss, die Jungfer (n.) ; I know, ich kenne ; promised, hat—versprochen ; to come and see to day, heute zu besuchen ; do not think, glaube nicht ; will come, kommt ; have you seen to day, haben sie (habt Ihr)—heute—gesehen ; I have had the pleasure of seeing, ich habe das Vergnügen gehabt—zu sehen ; I was sorry for it, es that mir sehr leid ; I—will tell, ich—sagen ; one day, be Gelegenheit ; told that, das gesagt haben (habet) ; pray, bitte ;

do not tell, sagen Sie (saget) nicht; for, denn; she should not know it, sie soll es nicht wissen. How is your father? Wie befindet sich Ihr Herr Vater; I thank you, ich danke Ihnen; he is pretty well, er befindet sich ziemlich wohl; give my compliments, machen sie—meine Empfehlung; if you please, gefälligst; I will not fail, ich werde nicht ermangeln, or ich werde es austrichten; wrote, schrieb; lately, neulich; his sisters, seine Jungfer Schwestern;* were coming here in a short, in kurzem hierher kommen würden; begged, bat; to let know, es—zu sagen; thus you will be able, sie können auch; to give, geben; which you bought, welche (die) sie gekauft haben; they hope, sie schmeicheln sich; that, daß; will make a present of them, ein Geschenk damit machen werden; their brother, ihr Bruder; has assured, hat—versichert; love, lieben; esteem, hochschätzen; without, ohne; knowing personally, persönlich zu kennen; Henry, Heinrich; carried, gebracht; What did he tell, was hat er gesagt; said nothing, hat—nichts gesagt.

EXERCISE XI.

It is on account of us, and not on account of themselves, that magistrates are necessary. On account of you and your children, as well as on account of me and mine, I have placed before your eyes this infallible truth.

EXPLANATIONS.

(*It is* not expressed) begin by—nicht allein, not only; are necessary, sind nöthig; magistrate, Obrigkeit (en); as well as, eben so wohl als; mine, der meinige; I have placed before your eyes, habe ich euch (Ihnen)—zu Gemüthe geführt; this, diese, *f.*; infallible, untrüglich; truth, Wahrheit.

* Instead of Jungfer, many use Fräulein and mesdemoiselles.

69. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Possessive Pronouns are of two kinds: those that are always followed by the noun to which they refer—those that are used with reference to a noun understood.

The first are called *conjunctive* or *adjective possessives*: the second, *disjunctive* or *absolute*.

70. DECLENSION OF THE CONJUNCTIVE POSSESSIVE.

Singular.

| <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> |
|--------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| N. mein Bruder, | meine Schwester, | mein Kind, |
| my brother, | my sister, | my child. |
| G. meines Bruders, | meiner Schwester, | meines Kindes, |
| D. meinem Bruder, | meiner Schwester, | meinem Kinde, |
| A. meinen Bruder, | meine Schwester, | mein Kind. |

Plural.

| | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| N. meine Brüder, | meine Schwestern, | meine Kinder, |
| G. meiner Brüder, | meiner Schwestern, | meiner Kinder, |
| D. meinen Brüdern, | meinen Schwestern, | meinen Kindern, |
| A. meine Brüder, | meine Schwestern, | meine Kinder. |

Decline in the same manner:—

| | | |
|-----------------|--------|-------|
| dein, thy, | deine | dein |
| sein, his, its, | seine | sein |
| ihr, her, its, | ihre | ihr |
| unser, our* | unsere | unser |
| euer, your* | eure | euer |
| ihr, their, | ihre | ihr |

The German Possessive pronoun agrees not only with the possessor in gender and number, but it should also agree in number and case with the thing possessed:—

* Unser and euer, in their inflexions, in the *masculine* and *neuter*, drop one of the last *e*'s:—unser, unseſ, unſerm, instead of unſereſ.

| | |
|---|--|
| der Vater und sein Sohn, | The father and his son. |
| das Kind und sein Buch, | The child and its book. |
| diese Frau liebt ihren Mann, | This woman loves her husband. |
| sie hat es ihrem Bruder gegeben, | She has given it to your brother. |
| die Nonnen haben ihr Kloster bauen lassen, | The nuns have had their convent built. |
| die Erben haben ihr Haus und ihre Gärten verkauft | The heirs have sold their house and gardens. |
| die Schwestern haben es ihrem Bruder gegeben, | The sisters have given it to their brother. |

71. The possessive pronoun *theirs** coming after the verb *to be* used in the sense of *to belong*, is expressed by *Ihnen*. dieses Buch ist *Ihnen* (or *ihnen*) This book is theirs (or yours)

The other possessives, *mein*, *dein*, etc., are used as in English:—

dieser Garten ist *mein*, *dein*, etc., This garden is mine.

72. In instances like the following, the personal instead of the possessive is often preferred:—

| | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Kommet ihm und mir zu Hülfe, | Come to his and my help. |
| die Reihe war an mir, | It was my turn. |
| Nehmen mir das Maas, | Take my measure. |
| Er ist ein guter Freund von mir, | He is one of my good friends. |

73. In polite language, the epithets *Herr*, *sir*; *Herrn*, *sirs*; *Frau*, *madam*; *Frauen*, *ladies*; *Jungfer*, *miss*; *Jungfern*, *young ladies*; are frequently used before a noun of kindred, which then should be preceded by the possessive pronoun.

Seine Jungfer† Schwestern, His sisters.

* And *Yours*, when speaking politely.

† *Frau* and *Jungfer*, when followed by another noun, remain undeclined.

The above epithets are also used after the definite article:—

| | |
|------------------|---------------|
| der Herr Graf, | The earl. |
| die Frau Gräfin, | The countess. |

Remark.—Instead of ihr, Ewro and Ihre are used, but only in addressing people of high rank.*

EXERCISE XII.

My father and my mother are at home, but my brothers and my sisters are in your garden. Your nephews and your nieces are gone to their country house. Where are then the children of your uncle? They are gone to fetch their mother, who is gone to see her aunt. Mr. Rumoni has squandered away all his property. Yesterday he wanted to discharge his servants, but he could not pay their wages. His creditors have sold his houses, his carriage, his horses, and his gardens, and have left him only his clothes and his dogs, which he loves more than his friends. He begged lately one of his friends to lend him some money, who answered him: I excuse your request, excuse (you) my refusal. Your master has related all this to my aunt, begging her to keep it secret. My aunt has related it to her uncle, her uncle to his servant, his servant to my sister, and the latter to her lover; and he related it to me. Pray tell it to no one but your wife. The friends of my friends are my friends. Be welcome; you are my friend because you are the friend of my friend. Sir, you honour me with your friendship without knowing me. Among other things

* These words are also found in old writings.

my friend has written to me in his letter, that I was to use every effort to procure (me) your friendship. But that does not go so fast. Sir, I am an Englishman.

John, have you given the book to my sister? No, Sir, I have given it to your brother. Why did you give it to my brother and not to my sister? Because your sister was not at home. Have you carried my letters to the post? Yes, Sir. Now give me my shoes and my penknife.

EXPLANATIONS.

At home, zu Hause; gone, gegangen; country house, das Landhaus; where, wo; then, denn; to fetch, holen; they are gone to fetch, sie holen; who is gone to see, welche—besucht; has squandered away, hat—durchgebracht; all his property, sein ganzes Vermögen; yesterday, gestern; he wanted to discharge, wollte er—verabschieden; the servant, der Bediente; he could not pay, er konnte nicht—bezahlen; the wages, der Lohn; the creditor, der Gläubiger; sold, verkauft; and have left him only, und haben ihm nichts gelassen als; which he loves more than, welche (die) er mehr liebt als; he begged, er bat; lately, neulich; to lend him, ihm—zu leihen; answered, antwortete; excuse, ich entschuldige; the request, das Begehren (die Bitte;); excuse you, entschuldigen Sie; the refusal, die Abschlägige Antwort; master, Herr; has related all this, hat alles dieses—erzählt; begging, hat gebeten; to keep it secret, es geheim zu halten; the latter, diese; lover, Liebhaber; pray, ich bitte; tell it to no one, sagen Sie es niemandem; be welcome, seyn Sie willkommen; because, weil; you honour me, sie beehren mich; with, mit (*dative*;) without knowing, ohne—zu kennen; among other things—has written, hat mir unter andern—geschrieben; in, in (*dative*;) that

I was to use every effort, ich sollte Alles anwenden; to procure, um—zu verschaffen; but that does not go so fast, das geht aber nicht so geschwind; have you given the book, habt Ihr das Buch—gegeben; I have given it, ich habe es—gegeben; because, weil; was not at home, nicht zu Hause war; to the post, auf die Post; carried, getragen; now, jetzt; give me, gebet mir.

74. POSSESSIVE DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

| <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> |
|-----------------------|------------------|----------------|
| N. der meinige, mine, | die meinige, | das meinige, |
| G. des meinigen, | der meinigen, | des meinigen, |
| D. dem meinigen, | der meinigen, | dem meinigen, |
| A. den meinigen, | die meinige, | das meinige. |
| <i>Plural.</i> | | |
| N. die meinigen, | die meinigen, | die meinigen, |
| G. der meinigen, | der meinigen, | der meinigen, |
| D. den meinigen, | den meinigen, | den meinigen, |
| A. die meinigen, | die meinigen, | die meinigen. |

Remark.—By the above may be seen that *disjunctive possessive* pronouns are declined with the *definite article*, and follow the declension of adjectives. Decline the following in the same manner:—

| | | |
|---------------------|---------------|---------------|
| der deinige, thine, | die deinige, | das deinige, |
| der seinige, his, | die seinige, | das seinige, |
| der unserige, ours, | die unserige, | das unserige, |
| der eurige, yours, | die eurige, | das eurige, |
| der ihrige, theirs, | die ihrige, | das ihrige. |

Remark.—Sometimes the *conjunctive possessives* are used instead of the *disjunctive possessives*, which are then declined in the singular like the *indefinite article*, as:—

| | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|---------|
| meiner, | meine, | meines. |
| Wessen Pferde sind das? | Whose horses are those? | |
| Es sind unsere, | They are ours. | |

EXERCISE XIII.

Your sister dances better than mine, but mine speaks German better than yours; and the sister of our governor sings better than yours and mine. Your brothers and mine are gone to the country, but my sisters and theirs are gone to church. Your brother is very fond of speaking of his children, and mine likes to speak of his. Whilst they were talking one day of their good children, a cat, I think it was ours, took away the roast chicken, which the servant had put on the table. The cloth of your coat is finer than that of mine, but my coat is better made than yours. Your son resembles your grandfather and mine, and my daughter resembles your mother.

EXPLANATIONS.

Dances, tanzet; speaks, redet; German, Deutsch; sings, singet; in the country, auf das Land; to church, in die Kirche; is very fond of speaking, redet sehr gern; whilst they were speaking one day, während dem sie eins—redeten; a cat, I think it was — took away, stahl eine Kaze ich glaube es war —; the roast chicken, das gebratene Hünchen; which, welches; had put on the table, auf den Tisch gestellt hat; the cloth, das Tuch; of your, an Ihrem; fine, fein; better made, besser gemacht; resembles, gleichet, (*dative;*) grandfather, Großvater.

75. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are also divided into *conjunctive* and *disjunctive*; the conjunctive are:—

| | | | | | |
|---------|---|------|--------|---|------|
| Dieser, | } | this | Jener, | } | that |
| Diese, | | | Jene, | | |
| Dieses, | | | Jenes, | | |

76. They are declined in the following manner :—

Singular.

| <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| N. dieser Knabe, this boy, | diese Magd, this maid servant | dieses Kind, this child, |
| G. dieses Knaben, | dieser Magd, | dieses Kindes, |
| D. diesem Knaben, | dieser Magd, | diesem Kinde, |
| A. diesen Knaben, | diese Magd, | dieses Kind. |

Plural.

| | | |
|-------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| N. diese Knaben, | diese Mägde, | diese Kinder, |
| G. dieser Knaben, | dieser Mägde, | dieser Kinder, |
| D. diesen Knaben, | diesen Mägden, | diesen Kindern, |
| A. diese Knaben, | diese Mägde, | diese Kinder. |

77. Remark.—Instead of *dieses* in the nominative and accusative neuter, *dieß* or *dieß* is often used :—

Dieß Buch, (for *dieses*) This book.

78. When two demonstrative pronouns in the *dative* or *genitive* accompany the same noun, the latter may end in *en* :—

der Rath dieses und jenen Mannes, The counsel of this or
that man.

EXERCISE XIV.

This gentleman speaks to that lady of that man who wishes to buy this house. Have you given the letters to that man? Is not that woman a relation of this girl? The rooms of this house would please me if they were larger. Do you know those gentlemen who are speaking to those ladies? I do not know them. I believe they are strangers.

EXPLANATIONS.

Speaks to, *spricht mit*; who wishes to buy, *welcher (der) —kaufen will*; is not that woman a relation, *ist—nicht eine*

62 DEMONSTRATIVE DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

Berwandtin; the room, das Zimmer; would please me, würden mir gefallen; if they were, wenn sie—wären; do you know, kennen sie; I do not know them, ich kenne sie nicht; I believe they are strangers, ich glaube es sind Fremde.

79. DEMONSTRATIVE
DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

Singular.

Masculine.

N. derjenige, that, he,
G. desjenigen, of that, of him,
D. demjenigen, to that, to him,
A. denjenigen, that, him.

Feminine.

diejenige, that, she,
derjenigen, of that, of her,
derjenigen, to that, to her.
diejenige, that, her.

Singular.

Neuter.

N. dasjenige, that,
G. desjenigen, of that,
D. demjenigen, to that,
A. dasjenige, that.

Plural for all genders

diejenigen, these or those,
derjenigen, of these or those,
denjenigen, to these or those,
diejenigen, these or those.

80. Sometimes the definite article is employed instead of the demonstrative; when this is the case, it should be pronounced with more stress, and is thus declined:—

| | | | | |
|----|---------|-------|---------|--------------|
| N. | der | die | das* | die |
| G. | dessen† | deren | dessen† | deren, deren |
| D. | dem | der | dem | denen |
| A. | den | die | das | die. |

81. *Remarks.*—When the articles *der, die, das*, are used

* *das*, that, is also used in an absolute manner, the same as *cela*, in French.

† The *neuter* and *masculine singular* are often expressed by *des*, especially in poetry and compound words.

for the demonstrative, the adverb *eben* is often used before, and *selber* after it:—

Eben derselbe, eben dieselbe, eben dasselbe, the very same.

82. *Derselbige, dieselbige, dasselbige, der nämliche*, and *bergleiche*, are also used in the sense of demonstratives.

83. To point out more particularly the object of which we speak, the adverbs *hier* and *da* are used with *dieser*:—

Dieser hier, this one, *Dieser da*, that one.

EXERCISE XV.

He* who is satisfied with his lot is happy, and he who is not so, is very unhappy. Those are already unhappy, who fear to become so. That man is very fond of dogs, and of all those who are fond of them. He will not marry his daughter but to him who has also that passion: he pities those who are not of his taste. He is very wise who can put up with those that are not so. Do you know those gentlemen yonder? Of which gentlemen are you then speaking? I am speaking of those who are dancing yonder. Yes I know some of them; he who is dressed in blue is my neighbour, and he with the black coat is my companion. Those who strive to please, please only those whom they do please; for by dint of wishing to please, we often displease. Of what people are you then speaking? I am not speaking of these, but of those.

EXPLANATIONS.

Who is satisfied with his lot, *welcher (der) mit seinem Schicksal zufrieden ist*; happy, *glücklich*; who is not so, *der es*

* *He, she, they*, used before a relative, in the sense of *that person, those persons*, must be expressed by the demonstrative pronoun.

nicht ist; very unhappy, sehr unglücklich; already, schon; who fear to become so, welche fürchten es zu werden; is very fond of, liebt sehr; who are fond of them, die sie lieben; he will not marry his daughter, but, er wird seine Tochter keinem andern geben, als; who has also, der auch—haben wird; the passion, die Leidenschaft; he pities, er beklagt; who are not of his taste, die seinen Geschmack nicht haben; wise, klug; can put up with, erträgt; who are not so, welche (die) es nicht sind; Do you know, kennen Sie; of which, von welchen; who are dancing yonder, welche (die) da unten tanzen; I know some of them, ich kenne einige davon; who is dressed in blue, welcher blau gekleidet ist; neighbour, Nachbar, (n.); he with the black coat, der mit dem schwarzen Kleide; who strive to please, die sich zwingen zu gefallen; only please, gefallen nur; whom, welchen; for, denn; by dint of wishing to please we displease, wer zu viel zu gefallen sucht, mißfällt; of what people, von welchen Leuten; but, sondern.

84.

INTERROGATIVE

AND

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The Interrogative Pronouns are:—

Wer? who? Was? what?

Welcher? Welche? Welches? which?

Was für ein? was für eine? was für? what kind of?

Wer and welcher are declined as follows:—

Masculine and Feminine.

Neuter.

N. wer? who?

was? what?

G. wessen? of whom? whose?

wessen? of what?

D. wem? to whom?

an was? woran? wozu?

worauf? to what?

A. wen? whom?

was? what?

| <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|-------------------|------------------|----------------|--------------------|
| N. welcher | welche | welches* | welche, which, who |
| G. welches | welcher | welches | welcher, of „ „ |
| D. welchem | welcher | welchem | welchen, to „ „ |
| A. welchen | welche | welches | welche, which, who |

85. *Remarks.*—*Wer* is used for persons in both numbers:—

| | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Wer ist da?</i> | Who is there? |
| <i>Wer sind diese Fremde?</i> | Who are those strangers? |

86. *Was* is only used for things:—

| | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Was ist das?</i> | What is that? |
| <i>Von was redet ihr?</i> | Of what do you speak? |

87. *Was für ein*, and sometimes *welch ein*, are used before a noun:—

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Ich weiß was für einen Antheil</i> | I know what interest you |
| <i>Ihr an meinem Glücke nehmet,</i> | take in my welfare. |

88. In the plural, and when the noun is only used in the singular, *ein* is omitted:—

| | |
|------------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Was für Gold ist das?</i> | What gold is that? |
| <i>Was für Kinder?</i> | What children? |

* * The Pupil must remark the following expressions:—

| | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Was ist grausamer?</i> | What is there more cruel? |
| <i>Was ist gottloser?</i> | What is there more wicked? |

EXERCISE XVI.

Who is always prudent, and who does not sometimes commit follies? Who is always right, and who is never wrong? Well! what do you say to it? You do not answer me? Of what are you thinking? Tell me to whom that

* The neuter pronoun *welches* is often used to relate to all genders and numbers: *welches ist die schönste?* which is the finest?

book belongs? Who has given it to you? Of what does it treat? Which little boy has bought those books? And to which little girl has he sold them? This little boy has bought them; but I do not know at what bookseller's. To which has he given them? Whose book has he taken? Whom does she love? Which of those women is your mother? To which girl has he given a ring? From which has he received one? Gently, Sir, why do you ask me all that? What is your intention? To what question do you wish me to answer? What glove have you found? What wine do you drink? What are you speaking of? Which of those girls have been disobedient? Those who are laughing. But they are all laughing, of which are you then speaking?

EXPLANATIONS.

Always, immer; prudent, klug, weise; does not commit follies, begeht keine Thorheiten; is — right, hat — Recht; is — wrong, hat Unrecht; well, wohlán; do you say to it, fagen Sie dazu; you do not answer me, Sie antworten mir nicht; of what are you thinking, woran* (an was) denken Sie; belongs, gehört; little boy, kleine Bursche (Knabe); has bought, hat—gekauft; sold, verkauft; bookseller, Buchhändler; taken, genommen; does she love, liebt sie; the ring, der Ring; has he received one, hat er einen bekommen; gently, sanfte; why, warum; do you ask, fragen Sie; the intention, die Absicht; to what, auf welche; question, Frage; do you wish me to answer, wollen Sie daß ich antworten soll; found, gefunden; do you drink, trinken Sie; what — of

* The adverb *wo* joined to a preposition, is frequently used for the relative pronoun; and if the preposition begins with a vowel *t* is added to *wo*: *womit*, with what? *woraus*, out of what?

woven; disobedient, ungehorsam; has been, ist — gewesen;
are laughing, lachen; all, alle.

89. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are:—

| | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| Welcher, welche, welches, wer, and der, die, das, as:— | |
| der Mann, welcher, or der mir es gesagt hat, | The man who has told it me. |
| die Frau welche (die) es mir gegeben hat, | The woman who has given it to me. |
| das Mädchen, welches (das) immer lacht, | The girl who always laughs. |

They are declined as at No. 81, except that *der* as a relative, has in the genitive plural *deren*.

90. *Remarks.*—*Whose* and *of Which*, followed by a noun in an affirmative sentence, are expressed by *dessen* or *deren*.

| | |
|--|--|
| Er ist ein armer Mann, dessen Frau vor etlichen Tagen ge- storben ist, | He is a poor man, whose wife died a few days ago. |
|--|--|

91. *Wer* and *was* used as relative pronouns, are used in the sense of *he who, she who, that which*:—

| | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Wer mich liebt, ist mein Freund, | He who loves me is my friend. |
| Was ich gesagt habe ist wahr, | What I have said is true. |

92. Sometimes *selbst* is joined to the relative:—

| | |
|---|---|
| Ein König der selbst regiert, | A king who rules himself. |
| Sie ist eine Mutter, die selbst ihre Kinder erzieht, | She is a mother who edu- cates her own children. |

93. The adverb *so*, which used to be employed for the relative with reference to a neuter or plural noun, is

now nearly obsolete: the following example will show how it was used:—

Das Mittel so (instead of das) The means which I proposed
 ich euch vorgeschlagen habe, to you.
 Diejenigen so (die or welche) Those who spoke to me.
 mit mir redeten.

EXERCISE XVII.

Here is the money which I owe you, and the books which you lent me. I am very much obliged to you for the kindness you have had for me, I will endeavour to make myself worthy of the friendship with which you honour me. The girl who is just gone out, has told me, that her brother who is now at Rome, has seen (there) the palace of the Vatican, which contains, as is reported, eleven thousand chambers. The man whom you saw at my house to day is (the) Councillor R—, the favourite of the prince, from whom he has received a superb gold watch, which is valued at a thousand crowns. He is a man who has much merit, and who is not at all infatuated with his merits. The house which he (has) bought of Mr. B— is one of the finest (that) I have ever seen.

EXPLANATIONS.

Here is or are, da ist; I owe you, ich Ihnen schuldig bin; you lent me, Sie mir geliehen haben; I am very much obliged to you for the kindness, Ich bin Ihnen für die Güte sehr verbunden; you have had for me, Sie für mich gehabt haben; I will endeavour, ich werde mich bestreben, (or ich werde trachten); to make myself worthy of the friendship, mich der Freundschaft würdig zu machen; you honour me, Sie mich beehren; is just gone out, so eben hinaus gegangen ist; is now, gegenwärtig—ist; there, daselbst, allda; the palace of

the Vatican, der Palast Vatican; contains, enthält; as is reported, wie man sagt; at my house, bei mir; counsellor, Rath; favourite, Liebling; a superb gold watch, eine prächtige goldene Uhr; has received, empfangen hat; is valued at a thousand, — auf tausend — geschätzt wird; merit, Verdienst, (c.); infatuated, eingenommen; with his merits, von seinen Verdiensten; I have ever seen, ich jemals gesehen habe.

94. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Ein^r, some one, one, and keiner, no one, none, no, when used in an absolute manner, make in the *nominative singular neuter*, ein^s and keiⁿs: the other cases are like the indefinite article. When they are conjunctive, they are also declined like the *indefinite article*.

95. The neuter ein^s is used in the sense of *a thing*, as, noch ein^s, one thing more; Ein^s ist dabei zu bemerken, there is one thing to be observed. It is also used to denote one of two or several persons who are not of the same sex; for example, in speaking to a man and to his wife:— Ein^s von Euch beiden hat Unrecht, One of you is in the wrong.

96. This pronoun has no plural, and when required *einige* is used.

Keiⁿs follows the same rule as ein^s: Keiⁿs von uns (*in speaking of several persons of different sexes*) war so flug daß er das Fenster aufgemacht hätte, none of us had the idea of opening the window.

97. *Any* is expressed by einig^es:—

Er ist nicht fähig euch einig^es He is not capable of doing
Leid zuzufügen, you any harm.

98. *Alles, alle, alles, (gan3)* all, are declined like the definite article.

This pronoun very seldom takes an article, but if it does, the article only is declined: all der, all die, all das.

This is also often the case when followed by a pronoun: All sein Geld, All his money.

When used substantively, it is used in the neuter, and should begin with a capital:—

Ich habe Alles gesehen, I have seen all.

99. *Remark.*—*Ganz* is used in the sense of *entire*; it always requires the article:—

Die ganze Stadt,* The whole town.

100. *Beide, die Beiden, both, is thus declined:—*

| | |
|-----------|---------------------|
| N. beide | die beiden, both |
| G. beider | der beiden, of both |
| D. beiden | den beiden, to both |
| A. beide | die beiden, both |

Remark.—*Beides* is used in an absolute manner to express two different objects:—

Er hat beides, He has both.

101. *Solcher, solches, such, is declined like guter, gute, gutes; and ein solcher, eine solche, ein solches, such a, like ein guter, eine gute, ein gutes, and is conjunctive.*

102. *Mancher, manche, manches, many, is conjunctive and absolute, and declined like guter, gute, gutes.*

Remark.—When followed by *ein, solch* is used in all genders and cases:—

| | |
|------------------|---------------|
| Solch ein Kind, | Such a child. |
| Solch eine Frau, | Such a woman. |

* Sometimes this word is found without any article, and then is undeclined:—*Ganz Europa, the whole of Europe.*

103. Ein jeder, each, every, is declined in the same manner, as :—

N ein jeder, G. eines jeden, D. einem jeden, etc.

Jeder,* without ein, is declined like all: jedes Kind, each child.

104. Jemand,* somebody, niemand, nobody, jedermann, everybody, are thus declined :—

| | | |
|--------------|------------|-------------|
| N. jemand | niemand | jedermann |
| G. jemandes | niemandes | jedermannes |
| D. jemandem† | niemandem† | jedermann |
| A. jemanden | niemanden | jedermann. |

105. Nichts, nothing, and etwas, something, require the adjective to which they are joined, to be in the neuter :—
Etwas Neues, something new. Nichts schönes, nothing fine.

106. Viel remains undeclined, except when it is preceded by an *article*, *adjective*, or a *preposition* :—

Haben Sie viel Freunde, Have you many friends.

The plural viele is used in an absolute manner :—

Viele wissen nicht das Geld zu gebrauchen, Many people know not the right use of money.

The neuter vieles is also used in an absolute manner for many things :—

Vieles geschieht zu unserer Zeit, Many things happen in our times, which one could never have believed.
das man niemals geglaubt hätte,

107. Mancher, manche, manches, is used in the sense of

* Every man, signifying every human creature, jeder Mensch.

† Also jemanden, niemanden.

such a one, several, some, many things :—

Mancher gibt sich für reich aus, Many give themselves out
der es nicht ist, to be rich who are not so.

Wir haben manches Glas Wein We have drunk many a glass
mit einander getrunken, of wine together.

Mancher wird im Kriege reich, Some become rich in war,
Mancher arm, others poor.

108. Man, one, people, they, is used to express a general report, and answers to the French pronoun *on* :—
It is said, one says, they say, Man sagt.

109. Etliche, many; verschiedene, some, several :—
Es waren unser etliche beisam- We were many, several to-
men, together.

Etliche aßen, etliche tranken, Some ate, others drank.

Einige and Etliche are also employed as follows :—

Einige sagen, es sey eine Schlacht Some say there has been a
vorgefallen, battle.

Einige von seinen Büchern sind Some of his books are good,
gut, einige sind schlecht, others are bad.

110. Ander is declined like an adjective: it is used, with and without an article :—

Ein anderes Pferd, Another horse.

Andere Pferde, Other horses.

Der andere, The other one.

Einige waren groß, andere klein, Some were big, others small.

Wann der Eine singet, so* wei- When or if the one sings, the
net der Andere, other weeps.

111. *However, howsoever, whatever*, before a noun, are

* So connects the consequent to the antecedent. [See Construction.]

rendered by *so groß, so viel, was für auch* :—

So große Gewalt, or so viele Gewalt er auch hat, Whatever may be his power.

So große, or so viele Vortheile er auch davon hat, Whatever advantages he may derive from it.

And before an adjective by *so* :—

So reich er auch ist, However rich he may be.

So schön auch die Weiber sind, However handsome women may be.

So groß auch seine Thorheit war, However great his folly might be.

112. Remark.—To the indeterminate pronouns, one of the adjectives in the neuter gender, *Rechtes, Vornehmes, Schlechtes, Geringses*, is joined to denote a person of quality, or, of low birth :—

Kennen Sie die Fremden nicht, die im Römischen Kaiser logiren? Do you not know the strangers who lodge at the Emperor of Rome's?

Nein, aber ich glaube doch, daß sie etwas Rechtes, Vornehmes or, nichts Geringses, sind, No, but I think they are people of note.

Der Mann den wir gesehen haben, muß jemand Rechtes (niemand Vornehmes) seyn, The man whom we saw must be something above the common. (Somebody of no note.)

EXERCISE XVIII.

Every woman thinks herself handsome, and every one (each) has self-love. The same as (the) men, my friend. Such a one thinks himself learned who is not so, and many men surpass even the women in vanity. My friend, I will tell you something ; if you speak of all women and all

men, you are wrong. I know some ladies who are **amiable**, and who do not think themselves to be so, and **several** literary men who are not vain. That may be, **no** rule without exception. However I should much like to **know** those persons of whom you are speaking to me. **Agriculture** is the mother of every art and of every good; it **nourishes** all men. The husbandman is more estimable than the **opulent** man who spends his life in idleness. All that the **earth** produces returns to her bosom, and becomes the **germ of a** new fecundity. Thus she takes back everything **she** has given, to return it again. It (she) **transforms itself** (herself) in a thousand beautiful objects which delight the eye. What an admirable variety among the animals! Some have but two feet, others have four, others have a **great** number, and many have none at all. Some walk, some creep; others fly, others swim, and others fly, **walk and swim**. There are some of an enormous size, as the whale; and there are others which are so small, that they are only seen through the microscope.

Whithersoever I look, I behold the eternal God! I recognise him in his works and in myself. The earth, the sea, and (the) Heaven, declare his power and his greatness. He is everywhere, and we all live in him. I received lately some letters from our old cousin. He writes to me among other things:—"Everybody says that I am ill; but thank God, I am not (so). There are even many who think that I am already dead: if that were the case, nobody would know it better than you. Some one has told me that my cousins wished for my death, that they might divide my property. Whatever may be the case, I inform you by these lines, that I am neither ill nor dead, and that

I shall marry in a few days." Well, tell me, what shall we do now? We can do nothing but deplore our lot and his.

EXPLANATIONS.

Woman, Frauenzimmer; has self-love, besitzt Eigenliebe; the same as the men, eben so wie die Mannspersonen; thinks himself learned, hält sich für gelehrt; is not so, es nicht ist; surpass even, übertreffen sogar; in vanity, an Eitelkeit; I will tell you, ich will Ihnen — sagen; if you speak, wenn Sie — reden; you are wrong, so haben Sie Unrecht; I know, ich kenne; a lady, eine Dame (n.); amiable, liebenswürdig; do not think themselves to be so, es nicht zu seyn glauben; literary men, die Gelehrten; who are not vain, die nicht eitel sind; that may be, das kann wohl seyn; the rule, die Regel; without exception, ohne Ausnahme; however I should much like to know, doch möchte ich gern — kennen; the person, die Person (en); you are speaking with me, Sie mit mir reden; agriculture, der Feldbau, or Ackerbau; the art, die Kunst (ü, e); the good, das Gut (ü, er); nourishes, ernähret; man, (in the sense of a human creature, whether male or female) der Mensch (en); husbandman, der Landmann; (pl. Landleute); estimable, schätzbar; an opulent man, ein reicher Mann (ä, er); life, das Leben; in idleness, in Weichlichkeit, Trägheit; spends, zubringt; produces, hervorbringt; returns, geht wieder — zurück; the bosom, der Schoos; becomes, wird; the germ, der Keim; the new fecundity, die neue Fruchtbarkeit; thus she takes back, Sie nimmt also wieder; has given, gegeben hat; to return it again, um es nochmals wieder zu geben; she transforms herself, Sie verwandelt sich; a beautiful object, ein schöner Gegenstand (ä, e); which delight, welche — entzücken;

what an admirable variety, welche bewunderungswürdige Verschiedenheit; among the animals, unter den Thieren; have but, haben nur; a very great number, sehr viele (eine sehr grosse Anzahl); none at all, gar keine; walk, gehen; creep, kriechen; fly, fliegen; swim, schwimmen; there are some, es gibt deren; an enormous size, eine ungeheure Grösse, (in the ablative, von einer ungeheueren, &c.); that they are only seen through the microscope, daß man sie nur durch das Mikroskop (Vergrößerungsglas) sieht; whithersoever, überall; I look, wo ich hinblicke; I behold, sehe ich; eternal, ewig; I recognise, ich erkenne; the work, das Werk; declare, verkündigen; the power, die Macht; live, leben; I received, ich empfang; lately, neulich; an old cousin, ein alter Vetter; he writes, er schreibt; says, sagt; that I am ill, ich wäre krank; thank God, Gott sey Dank; I am not so, ich bin es nicht; there are even, es gibt sogar; who think that I am already dead, die mich schon für Todt halten; if that were the case, wenn das wäre; would know it better, so würde es — besser wissen; wished for my death, meinen Tod wünschten; that they might divide my property, um mein Vermögen theilen zu können; whatever may be the case, dem sey, wie ihm wolle; by, durch; a line, eine Zeile; that I am neither ill nor dead, daß ich weder krank, noch gestorben bin; and that I shall marry, und daß ich mich — verheirathen werde; well, wohl; tell me, sagen Sie mir; shall we now do, machen wir jetzt; we can do nothing, wir können nichts anders thun; than deplore, als — beweinen; the lot, das Schicksal (e.)

113.

VERBS.*

AUXILIARY VERBS.

There are three auxiliaries in German :—

1. *Haben*, to have. 2. *Seyn*, to be. 3. *Werden*, to become.

The first two serve to conjugate all verbs in their compound tenses ; the third is used to form the future and conditional tenses, and also to form the passive voice.

Conjugation of the Auxiliaries, Haben and Seyn.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

Haben, to have *Seyn*, to be

Gerund.

zu haben, † to have *zu seyn*, to be
um zu haben, for having *um zu seyn*, for being
ohne zu haben, without having *ohne zu seyn*, without being

Participle Present.

Habend, having *Sehend*, § being

Past Participle.

Gehabt, had *Gewesen*, been

* As the definitions of verbs which are generally used in German are the same as the pupil is presumed to have learned in his own Grammar, only those explanations will be given that are strictly necessary.

† The force of these propositions will be explained in their proper places.

§ The present participle of this verb is hardly ever used ; instead of it, *indem*, *da*, *weil*, are used with the tense of the verb implied by the sense:—

Indem, or *weil* *ich* auf dem Lande bin or war, Being in
Weil wir auf dem Lande waren, the country.

Compound Tenses.

| | |
|--|---|
| Gehabt haben, to have had | Gewesen seyn, to have been |
| gehabt zu haben, to have had | gewesen zu seyn, to have been |
| um gehabt zu haben, for having had | um gewesen zu seyn, for having been |
| ohne gehabt zu haben, without having had | ohne gewesen zu seyn, without having been |

Remark 1.—In compound tenses the infinitive comes after the participle.

N.B.—The verb *seyn* always compounds its own tenses.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

| | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Ich habe, I have | Ich bin, I am |
| du hast, thou hast | du bist, thou art |
| er hat, he has | er ist, he is |
| sie hat, she has | sie ist, she is |
| man hat*, one has | man ist, one is |
| wir haben, we have | wir sind, we are |
| ihr habet, you have | ihr seyd, you are |
| sie haben, they have. | sie sind, they are. |

Imperfect.

| | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| Ich hatte, I had | Ich war, I was |
| du hattest, thou hadst | du warest, thou wast |
| er hatte, he had | er war, he was |
| wir hatten, we had | wir waren, we were |
| ihr hattet, you had | ihr waret, you were |
| sie hatten, they had. | sie waren, they were. |

* See Number 108.

The Perfect, (Compound of the Present.)

| | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Ich habe gehabt, I have had | Ich bin gewesen*, I have been |
| du hast gehabt, thou hast had | du bist gewesen, thou hast been |
| er hat gehabt, he has had | er ist gewesen, he has been |
| wir haben gehabt, we have had | wir sind gewesen, we have been |
| ihr habet gehabt, you have had | ihr seyd gewesen, you have been |
| sie haben gehabt, they have had. | sie sind gewesen, they have been. |

The Pluperfect, (the Compound of the Imperfect.)

| | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Ich hatte gehabt, I had had | Ich war gewesen, I had been |
| du hättest gehabt, thou hadst had | du wärest gewesen, thou hadst been |
| er hatte gehabt, he had had | er war gewesen, he had been |
| wir hätten gehabt, we had had | wir wären gewesen, we had been |
| ihr hättet gehabt, you had had | ihr wäret gewesen, you had been |
| sie hätten gehabt, they had had. | sie wären gewesen, they had been. |

Future. †

| | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| Ich werde haben, I shall or will have | Ich werde seyn, I shall or will be |
| du wirst haben, thou shalt or wilt have | du wirst seyn, thou shalt or wilt be |
| er wird haben, he shall or will have | er wird seyn, he shall or will be |
| wir werden haben, we shall or will have. | wir werden seyn, we shall or will be. |

* Not ich habe gewesen. See N.B., page 78.

† The future and conditional of all verbs are formed by using the auxiliary werden with the infinitive of the verb.

Future Continued.

| | |
|---|---|
| ihr werdet haben, you shall or will have | ihr werdet seyn, you shall or will be |
| sie werden haben, they shall or will have. | sie werden seyn, they shall or will be |

Future past. (The Compound of the Future.)

| | |
|--|---|
| Ich werde gehabt haben,* I shall or will have had | Ich werde gewesen seyn, I shall or will have been |
| du wirst gehabt haben, thou shalt or wilt have had | du wirst gewesen seyn, thou shalt or wilt have been |
| er wird gehabt haben, he shall or will have had | er wird gewesen seyn, he shall or will have been |
| wir werden gehabt haben, we shall or will have had | wir werden gewesen seyn, we shall or will have been |
| ihr werdet gehabt haben, you shall or will have had | ihr werdet gewesen seyn, you shall or will have been |
| sie werden gehabt haben, they shall or will have had. | sie werden gewesen seyn, they shall or will have been. |

Conditional.

| | |
|---|--|
| Ich würde haben, I should, could, would, or might have | Ich würde seyn, I should, could, would, or might be |
| du würdest haben, thou should'st could'st, would'st, or might'st have | du würdest seyn, thou should'st could'st, would'st, or might'st be |
| er würde haben, he should, could, would, or might have | er würde seyn, he might, could, would, or should be |
| wir würden haben, we should, could, would, or might have | wir würden seyn, we might, could, would, or should be |

* The infinitive is always placed after the participle.

Conditional Continued.

ihr würdet haben, you should, ihr würdet seyn, you should,
 could, would, or might have could, would, or might be
 sie würden haben, they should, sie würden seyn, they might,
 could, would, or might have could, would, or should be.

Past Conditional. (Compound of the Conditional.)

| | |
|---|--|
| Ich würde gehabt haben, I should, &c., have had | Ich würde gewesen seyn, I should, &c., have been |
| du würdest gehabt haben, thou should'st, &c., have had | du würdest gewesen seyn, thou should'st, &c., have been |
| er würde gehabt haben, he should, &c., have had | er würde gewesen seyn, he should, &c., have been |
| wir würden gehabt haben, we should, &c., have had | wir würden gewesen seyn, we should, &c., have been |
| ihr würdet gehabt haben, you should, &c., have had | ihr würdet gewesen seyn, you should, &c., have been |
| sie würden gehabt haben, they should, &c., have had. | sie würden gewesen seyn, they should, &c., have been. |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

| | |
|--|---|
| Daß ich habe, that I may have | Daß ich sey, that I may be |
| daß du habest, that thou may'st have | daß du seyst, that thou may'st be |
| daß er (sie) habe, that he (she) may have | daß er (sie) sey, that he (she) may be |
| daß wir haben, that we may have | daß wir seyn, that we may be |
| daß ihr habet, that you may have | daß ihr seyd, that you may be |
| daß sie haben, that they may have | daß sie seyn, that they may be. |

Compound Tense.

| | |
|--|---|
| Daß ich gehabt habe,* that I may have had | Daß ich gewesen sey, that I may have been |
| daß du gehabt habest, that thou may'st have had | daß du gewesen seyst, that thou may'st have been |
| daß er gehabt habe, that he may have had | daß er gewesen sey, that he may have been |
| daß wir gehabt haben, that we may have had | daß wir gewesen seyn, that we may have been |
| daß ihr gehabt haben, that you may have had | daß ihr gewesen seyd, that you may have been |
| daß sie gehabt haben, that they may have had | daß sie gewesen seyn, that they may have been |

Imperfect.

| | |
|--|---|
| Daß ich hätte, that I might have | Daß ich wäre, that I might be |
| daß du hättest, that thou mightest have | daß du wärest, that thou mightest be |
| daß er hätte, that he might have | daß er wäre, that he might be |
| daß wir hätten, that we might have | daß wir wären, that we might be |
| daß ihr hättet, that you might have | daß ihr wäret, that you might be |
| daß sie hätten, that they might have | daß sie wären, that they might be |

Compound Tense.

| | |
|---|---|
| Daß ich gehabt hättet, that I might have had | Daß ich gewesen wäre, that I might have been |
|---|---|

* Daß is one of the words that transpose the verb of the nominative to the end of the sentence.—*See Construction.*

† If daß be omitted, the construction would be regular, as:—
ich hätte gehabt, I would have had.

Compound Tense Continued.

| | |
|---|--|
| daß du gehabt hättest, that thou mightest have had | daß du gewesen wärest, that thou mightest have been |
| daß er gehabt hätte, that he might have had | daß er gewesen wäre, that he might have been |
| daß wir gehabt hätten, that we might have had | daß wir gewesen wären, that we might have been |
| daß ihr gehabt hättet, that you might have had | daß ihr gewesen wäret, that you might have been |
| daß sie gehabt hätten, that they might have had | daß sie gewesen wären, that they might have been. |

Future Tense.

| | |
|--|---|
| Daß ich haben werde, that I shall have | Daß ich seyn werde, that I shall be |
| daß du haben werdest, that thou shalt have | daß du seyn werdest, that thou shalt be |
| daß er haben werde, that he shall have | daß er seyn werde, that he shall be |
| daß wir haben werden, that we shall have | daß wir seyn werden, that we shall be |
| daß ihr haben werdet, that you shall have | daß ihr seyn werdet, that you shall be |
| daß sie haben werden, that they shall have. | daß sie seyn werden, that they shall be. |

Compound of the Future.

| | |
|---|--|
| Wann ich werde gehabt haben, when I shall have had | Wann ich werde gewesen seyn, when I shall have been |
| wann du werdest gehabt haben, when thou shalt have had | wann du werdest gewesen seyn, when thou shalt have been |
| wann er werde gehabt haben, when he shall have had | wann er werde gewesen seyn, when he shall have been |
| wann wir werden gehabt haben, when we shall have had | wann wir werden gewesen seyn, when we shall have been |

Compound of the Future Continued.

| | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| wann ihr werdet gehabt haben, | wann ihr werdet gewesen seyn, |
| when you shall have had | when you shall have been |
| wann sie werden gehabt haben, | wann sie werden gewesen seyn, |
| when they shall have had. | when they shall have been. |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| Habe (du,) have thou | Sey (du,) be thou |
| habe er, let him have | sey er, let him be |
| haben wir, let us have | seyn wir, let us be |
| habet (ihr,) have ye | seyd (ihr,) be ye |
| haben (sie,) let them have. | seyn sie, let them be. |

REMARKS.

114. When a verb is conjugated interrogatively, the nominative is placed after the verb:—

Habe ich? have I? Bin ich? am I?

115. The negations are, nicht, not; nichts, nothing; kein, keine, no, none; nie, niemals, never; niemand, nobody; they are placed as in English:—

Ich habe nicht,* I have not Ich bin nicht, I am not
Habe ich nicht, have I not? Bin ich nicht, am I not?

116. The accusative and dative are placed as in English, in a simple tense, as:—

Ich habe es, I have it Haben Sie das Buch, have you
the book

* See adverbs and the Construction.

| | |
|--|---|
| Ja, ich bin dabei gewesen, Thus we say:— | Yes, I have been at it |
| Ich weiß schon, daß Ihr Bruder gestorben ist, und bin darüber betrübt, | I already know that your brother is dead, and I am sorry for it |
| To be sorry for any thing, | Über etwas betrübt seyn. |
| Sie haben geheirathet! Ich wünsche Ihnen Glück dazu, | You are married! I wish you luck (I congratulate you) |
| To congratulate a person on something, | Einem zu etwas Glück wünschen |
| Sie haben mir zwei Ducaten geschickt, ich danke Ihnen dafür, | You have sent me two ducats I thank you for them |
| To thank one for something, | Einem für etwas danken. |
| Ich habe meinen Theil davon, Seinen Theil von etwas haben, | I have my part of it To have one's part of some- thing |
| Ich rede nicht davon, von ihm, von ihr, &c., | I do not speak of it, of him, of her, &c. |
| Von etwas, von einem reden, | To speak of something, of some one |
| Ich komme daher, Woher kommen, | I come thence To come from somewhere |
| Ich bitte Sie darum, Um etwas bitten, | I pray you for it To pray for something |
| Ich bin damit zufrieden, Mit etwas zufrieden seyn, | I am satisfied with it To be satisfied with something |
| Er ist deswegen böse, Wegen etwas böse seyn, | He is angry with it To be angry with something |

122. The particule da, denotes a repose; hin or dahin denotes a movement from one place to another:—

Ich bin auch da gewesen, I have been there also

Ich will auch hin, or, dahin I will come there also
kommen,

Remark.—Hinauf, hinunter, hinaus, hinein, hinüber, &c., are used according to the motion being *from the bottom to the top, from the top to the bottom, from within to without, from without to within, or, from one side to another*; we say:—

An etwas denken, to think of something:—

Ich habe auch daran gedacht, I have also thought of it

Zu etwas legen, to add to something:—

Ich habe dazu (hinzu) gelegt, I have added to it.

In einem Orte seyn, to be in a place:—

Er ist darin, . He is in it.

123 The German language has no particule which relates to a genitive, therefore *of it* and *of them* are rendered by *dessen, deren*:—

Sind Sie Geldes benöthiget,! Have you need of money? .

Ja, ich bin dessen benöthiget, Yes, I am in need of it.

124. When the partitive pronouns *some* or *any* are used with reference to a noun understood, they are rendered by *welcher, welche, welches*:—

Ist Hafer da, Are there any oats?

Ja, es ist welcher da, Yes, there are some there

Haben Sie Wein, Have you any wine?

Ja, ich habe welchen,* Yes, I have some

125. If the answer be negative, then *keiner, keine, keins* are used instead of *welcher, &c.*:—

* This pronoun may often be omitted, and instead of the above one may say, Ja, es ist da.

| | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| Nein, es ist keiner da, | No, there are none |
| Ich habe keinen, | I have none |

126. *Remark.*—The following words, *hinetin*, *herein*, *hinauf*, &c., often embarrass foreigners; they are thus used:—

If a person is to come into a place where the one is who calls, *herein* is used:—

| | |
|--------------------|----------------|
| Kommen Sie herein, | Come in (here) |
| Gehen Sie herein, | Go in (here) |

And if he is to mount, *herauf* should be employed:—

| | |
|--------------------|----------------|
| Kommen Sie herauf, | Come up (here) |
| Gehen Sie herauf, | Go up (here) |

127. But when the person is to go where the one who speaks is not, then the particule *hin* instead of *her* is joined to the preposition:—

| | |
|-------------------|-------|
| Gehen Sie hinein, | Go in |
| Gehen Sie hinauf, | Go up |

EXERCISE XIX.

Upon the Auxiliary Verbs.

It is easy to say I am contented, but it is difficult to be so always. He who is contented is rich. You are satisfied, and I am so also. You are always in a good humour, and I am so also; thus we are rich without having much money. Why are your sisters always dull? Tell me, why are they (so)? They are not always so; they are sometimes in a very good humour, particularly the youngest, who is sometimes so merry, that she makes me fear for her health. I have no money, but you have a great deal. My sister

has a head ache; she danced too much at the ball. Lizzy, have you seen my gold seal? I have seen it, but not to-day. How many scholars has your brother had?

The sea was calm, the air was serene; the whole crew was upon deck. They had had so much toil and uneasiness. My friends, cried the captain, the tempest is over; the moon gives us her lovely light; it is true, we have suffered much, but be of good cheer, and fear nothing; our ship will soon be near the Cape of Good Hope.

I was yesterday at your brother's house, and your sisters were there also. Where were you yesterday? I was at my brother-in-law's, but I wish I had not been there. I had yesterday the honour of seeing your cousin, and she had the kindness to assure me of her friendship. We had last year more pleasure than we have this year. You had a fine garden, and I had a fine carriage.

Where have you been my friend? I have been in London and Petersburgh. Have you not been to Paris? No. I have not been there, but I have been at Lyons. You have had my book, where is it? I have had it, but I have it no longer. Where have you put it? I have put it on the table. Have you also had my pen? No, I have not had it; I think (that) your brother has had it. As soon as I was recovered from my illness, I set out for the Spa. After having been there for some weeks, I set out for Frankfort. I will be satisfied with you my dear neighbour, if you will be so with me. Will you be at home to-morrow? To-morrow I shall be at home till ten o'clock. Will you have the kindness to lend me your penknife?

Have patience, my friend, and be not so uneasy. Do you think that I am able to be easy without money and

credit? Not to have wherewithal to live, and to be easy, is above my comprehension. Are you contented when you are ill? When I am ill, I am as contented as one can be who is ill, and the hope of being soon well again fills me with joy. But if you had neither money nor credit? I should have friends. There are a great many people who are not happy, although they are rich.

I should have no reason to complain if I had what I have not. My friend, when one has what is necessary, one ought to be satisfied. I should be so if I had a hundred thousand florins, a beautiful house, &c. I would wish that you were more attentive than you are, and that your brother were less absent. Would to God that I had what I wish, and that you had what you so passionately desire; how happy we should be. My friend would not have been very sorry for his loss, if Miss N—— had had his watch. She would have returned it to him with pleasure, if she had found it in the place where she had put it. They accuse you of having been idle and negligent in your business—is that true? Being lately in the country, I received a letter from your teacher, in which he much complained of you.

EXPLANATIONS.

Easy, leicht; to say, zu sagen; contented, zufrieden, vergnügt; difficult, schwer; always, immer; also, auch; thus we are, — also sind wir; without, ohne; money, Geld; dull, traurig; so, es; sometimes, bisweilen, manchmal; in a very good humour, recht lustig, (aufgeräumt;) particularly, besonders; that she makes me fear for her health, daß ich wegen ihrer Gesundheit besorgt bin; a great deal, viel; head ache, Kopf-

weh; danced too much, zu viel getanzt; at the ball, auf dem Balle; a gold seal, ein goldenes Petschaft; seen, sehen; to-day, heute; how many, wie viel; scholar, Schüler; the sea, das Meer; calm, ruhig; the air, die Luft; serene, heiter; the whole crew, alles Schiffsvolk; on deck, auf dem Verdecke; so much, so viele; toil, Mühe; uneasiness, die Sorge, (n) Unruhe (n); cried, schrie, rief; the tempest, der Sturm (ü, e) over, vorüber; gives us her lovely light, leuchtet freundlich auf uns herab; true, wahr; much, vieles; suffered, gelitten; be of good cheer, fürchtet nichts mehr; soon, bald; near the Cape of Good Hope, bei dem Vorgebirge der guten Hoffnung; at, bei; (house understood;) brother-in-law, Schwäger; I wish I had not been there, Ich wollte daß ich nicht da gewesen wäre; the honour, die Ehre; of seeing, zu sehen; the kindness, die Gefälligkeit; to assure me of her friendship, mich ihrer Freundschaft zu versichern; last year, voriges Jahr; the pleasure, das Vergnügen; a carriage, ein Wagen; (mas.) there, da, daselbst; where, wo; no longer, nicht mehr; put, hingelegt; put on the table, auf den Tisch gelegt; as soon as, so bald als; recovered, hergestellt; the illness, die Krankheit; I set out for, reiste ich nach; after having been there for some weeks, nachdem ich einige Wochen allda gewesen war; to be satisfied with some one, mit einem zufrieden seyn; able, im Stande; not to have wherewithal to live, nichts zu leben haben; is above my comprehension, das ist mir zu hoch (unbegreiflich); ill, krank; I am as, so bin ich so; of soon being well again, bald wieder hergestellt zu seyn; fills me with joy, erfüllet mich mit Freude; neither — nor, weder — noch; there are many people, es gibt viele Menschen; have no reason, keine Ursache haben; to complain, mich zu beklagen; what is necessary, das Nöthige; one ought to be, muß man — seyn;

I would wish, ich wollte; attentive, aufmerksam; less absent, nicht so zerstreuet; would to God, wollte Gott; what das — was; I wish, ich wünsche; you so passionately desire, Sie so sehnlich verlangen; How happy we should be, was würden wir so glücklich seyn; sorry, vertrießlich; for his loss, über seinen Verlust; returned, wieder gegeben; found, gefunden; in the place, an dem Orte; put, hingelegt; they accuse you, man beschuldiget dich; idle, faul, träge; negligent, nachlässig; in your business, in deinen Geschäften; being lately in the country, da ich neulich auf dem Lande war; I received, erhielt ich; in which, in welchem; he much complained of you, er sich sehr über dich beklagte.

128.

REGULAR VERBS.

German verbs are conjugated nearly in the same manner as English verbs.

The Infinitive of all German verbs ends in en*

Loben, to praise

Lieben, to love

The Past Participle is formed from the Infinitive by prefixing the syllable ge, and changing the final n into t:—

Gelobet, † praised

Geliebet, loved

129. *Exceptions.*—The prefix ge is not used before

* The e of which is generally dropped when the termination is preceded by l, eh, er, e, or u, as;—Schmeicheln, to flatter; hindern, to hinder, instead of Schmeichelen, hinderen.

† The e is generally dropped in the final syllable of the past participle, as gelobt.

the past participle of verbs derived from other languages that terminate in *iren* or *ieren*, as:—

Kommandiren, to command *Kommandiret*, commanded (not *gefommandiret*)

130. Nor before words that begin with an inseparable prefix, as, *be*, *er*, *ver*, *über*, &c., as:—

| | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>beleben</i> , to animate | <i>belebt</i> , animated |
| <i>erzählen</i> , to relate | <i>erzählt</i> , related |
| <i>verkaufen</i> , to sell | <i>verkauft</i> , sold |
| <i>übersetzen</i> , to translate | <i>übersetzt</i> , translated |

131. *The Perfect of the Infinitive* is formed as in English, with the exception that the participle is expressed before the auxiliary, as:—

Gelobet haben, (not *haben gelobet*) to have loved.

132. *The Present Participle* is formed by adding *b* to the Infinitive, as:—

Lobend, praising

133. *The present of the Indicative and the Subjunctive*, is formed from the Infinitive by changing *en* into *e*, *est*, *et*,* (subj. *e*) in the singular, and *en*,* *et*, *en*, in the plural.

134. *The Imperfect of the above two modes* is formed by changing the termination of the Infinitive into—
te, *test*, *te*, singular, *ten*, *tet*, *ten*, plural.

135. For the sake of euphony, particularly in verbs that terminate in *ben*, *ten*, *tjen*, *sten*, the *e* of the termina-

* In most verbs the second person plural of the *present Indicative* is like the third singular of the same tense; and the first and third persons plural like the infinitive.

tion *en* is retained, as:—

Reben, to speak, $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{ich rebete,} \\ \text{bu rebetest,} \\ \text{er rebete,} \end{array} \right\} \text{instead of } \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{redte,} \\ \text{redtest,} \\ \text{redte.} \end{array} \right\}$

136. *The Perfect and Pluperfect* are formed in the same manner as in English, *i. e.*, by using the past participle with the present or the imperfect of the auxiliary *haben*, to have, as:—

137. *Perfect.*—*Ich habe gelobt*, I have praised

138. *Pluperfect.*—*Ich hatte gelobt*, I had praised

139. *The Future and Conditional* are also formed in a similar way as the English, *i. e.*, by using *werden* before the Infinitive:—

Ich werde loben, I shall praise *Ich würde loben*, I could praise

Remark.—Most German verbs are regular, and conjugated according to the following form.

140. CONJUGATION OF A REGULAR VERB

Loben, TO PRAISE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

Loben, to praise Gelobt haben, to have praised

Gerund.

Su loben, to praise *Gelobt zu haben*, to have praised
um zu loben, for to praise *um gelobt zu haben*, for having
praised
ohne zu loben, without prais- *ohne gelobt zu haben*, without
ing. having praised.

Participles.

Present.

Lobend, praising

Past.

Gelob(e)t, praised

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

| | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Ich lobe, I praise | Dasß ich lobe, that I may praise |
| du lob(e)st, thou praisest | dasß du lob(e)st, thou mayest |
| er lob(e)t, he praises | praise |
| wir loben, we praise | er lobe, he may praise |
| ihr lob(e)t, ye praise | wir loben, we may praise |
| sie loben, they praise. | ihr lob(e)t, you may praise |
| | sie loben, they may praise. |

Imperfect.

| | |
|---|--|
| Ich lob(e)te, I did praise or was praising | Dasß ich lob(e)te, that I might praise |
| du lob(e)test, thou didst praise | dasß du lob(e)test, thou might- est praise |
| er lob(e)te, he did praise | dasß er lob(e)te, that he might praise |
| wir lob(e)ten, we did praise | dasß wir lob(e)ten, that we might praise |
| ihr lob(e)tet, you did praise | dasß ihr lob(e)tet, that ye might praise |
| sie lob(e)ten, they did praise. | dasß sie lob(e)ten, that they might praise. |

Perfect.

| | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Ich habe gelobt, I have praised | Dasß ich gelobt habe,* that I may have praised |
| du hast gelobt, thou hast praised | dasß du gelobt habest, that thou mayest have praised |
| er hat gelobt, he has praised | dasß er gelobt habe, that he may have praised |
| wir haben gelobt, we have praised | |

* Dasß and some other conjunctions transpose the verb of the nominative after the participle.

Perfect Continued.

| | |
|---|--|
| ihr habet gelobt, ye have praised ed | daß wir gelobt haben, that we may have praised |
| sie haben gelobt, they have praised. | daß ihr gelobt habet, that you may have praised |
| | daß sie gelobt haben, that they may have praised. |

Pluperfect.

| | |
|--|---|
| Ich hatte gelobt, I had praised | Daß ich gelobt hätte,* that I might have praised |
| du hättest gelobt, thou hadst praised | daß du gelobt hättest, that thou mightest have praised |
| er hatte gelobt, he had praised | daß er gelobt hätte, that he might have praised |
| wir hatten gelobt, we had praised | daß wir gelobt hätten, that we might have praised |
| ihr hättet gelobt, ye had praised ed | daß ihr gelobt hättet, that ye might have praised |
| sie hatten gelobt, they had praised. | daß sie gelobt hätten, that they might have praised. |

Future.

| | |
|--|---|
| Ich werde loben, I shall or will praise | Daß ich loben werde, that I shall praise |
| du wirst loben, thou shalt or wilt praise | daß du loben werdest, that thou shalt praise |
| er wird loben, he shall or will praise | daß er loben werde, that he shall praise |
| wir werden loben, we shall or will praise | daß wir loben werden, that we shall praise |

* See note on preceding page.

Future Continued.

| | |
|---|--|
| ihr werdet loben, ye shall or will praise | daß ihr loben werdet, that ye shall praise |
| sie werden loben, they shall or will praise. | daß sie loben werden, that they shall praise. |

Past Future.

| | |
|--|---|
| Ich werde gelobt haben, I shall or will have praised | Wenn ich werde gelobt haben, when I shall or will have praised |
| du wirst gelobt haben, thou shalt or wilt have praised | wann du werdest gelobt haben, when thou shalt or wilt have praised |
| er wird gelobt haben, he shall or will have praised | wann er werde gelobt haben, when he shall or will have praised |
| wir werden gelobt haben, we shall or will have praised | wann wir werden gelobt haben, when we shall or will have praised |
| ihr werdet gelobt haben, ye shall or will have praised | wann ihr werdet gelobt haben, when ye shall or will have praised |
| sie werden gelobt haben, they shall or will have praised. | wann sie werden gelobt haben, when they shall or will have praised. |

Conditional.

| | |
|--|--|
| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> |
| Ich würde loben, I should, would, could, or might praise | Ich würde gelobt haben, I should, would, or could have praised |
| du würdest loben, thou shouldst &c. praise | du würdest gelobt haben, thou shouldst, &c. have praised |
| er würde loben, he should, &c. praise | er würde gelobt haben, he should, &c. have praised |

Conditional Continued.

| | |
|---|---|
| wir würden loben, we should, &c. praise | wir würden gelobt haben, we should, &c. have praised |
| ihr würdet loben, ye should, &c. praise | ihr würdet gelobt haben, ye should, &c. have praised |
| sie würden loben, they should, &c. praise. | sie würden gelobt haben, they should, &c. have praised |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| <i>Singular.</i> | | <i>Plural.</i> | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| Lobe (du), praise thou | | Loben wir, | } let us praise |
| lobe er, let him praise | | lasset uns loben, | |
| lobe sie, let her praise | | wir wollen loben, | } let them praise. |
| er lobe, let him praise | | lobet (ihr), praise ye | |
| sie lobe, let her praise | | loben sie, | } let them praise. |
| daß er (sie) lobe, | } let him or her praise | daß sie loben, | |
| er (sie), mag loben, | | sie mögen loben, | |
| er (sie) soll loben, | | sie sollen loben, | |

Conjugate in the same manner :

| | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| lieben, to love | scherzen, to joke |
| spielen, to play | lachen, to laugh |

Observation.—The root of a verb is the part left when the termination is taken away, as:—

| | | |
|---------|------|--------|
| loben | root | lob |
| hören | „ | hör |
| lächeln | „ | lächel |

In the present and imperative, the *e* before *st* and *t*, is generally dropped, when this can be done without difficulty in pronouncing the verb, as,

| | |
|----------|-------------|
| Ich höre | Ich handle |
| du hörst | du handelst |
| er hört | er handelt |

The same is the case in the imperfect indicative, before *te, telt, te*; *ten, tet, ten*; and in the past participle before *t*;

—Examples:—

| | |
|--------------|-----------|
| Ich lobte | gelobt |
| ich tabelte | getatelt |
| ich wanderte | gewandert |
| ich handelte | gehandelt |
| ich forderte | gefordert |

N.B.—The chief instances where the omission of *t* would produce a harsh (or difficult to pronounce) sound, are after

b, dn, gn, t, th, f, sch, ß, ð.

REMARKS ON MOODS AND TENSES.

141. The present participle used after a preposition in English, is rendered in the following manner:—

| | |
|--|--|
| After having said that, he went away | Nach dem er dieses gesagt hatte ging er weg |
| He began by praising me, then (afterwards) he said | Erst, anfangs, or anfänglich lobte er mich, hernach sagte er |
| He began by levying new taxes, and finished by ruining the country | Er fing damit an, daß er neue Auflage machte, und endigte damit, daß er das Land ins Verderben stürzte |
| He thought to extricate himself by saying | Er meinte davon zu kommen, wenn er sagte |
| He was hanged for having robbed | Er ist gehängt worden, weil er gestohlen hatte |

142. The following verbs require either the gerund after them, or the conjunction *daß* with a nominative:—

| | |
|---|--|
| Bekennen, to acknowledge, to confess | wissen, to know sollen, to be obliged |
|---|--|

| | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| erkennen, to acknowledge | schwören, to swear |
| behaupten, to maintain | gehen, to go |
| denken, to think | glauben, to believe |
| finden, } to find | würdigen, to deign |
| finden, } | verlangen, to desire |
| erklären, to declare | sich einbilden, to imagine, as— |
| tund thun, to publish | |

Ich bekenne empfangen zu haben, or ich bekenne, daß ich empfangen habe, I acknowledge to have received.

143. After the verbs werden, wollen, können, mögen, dürfen, lassen, müssen, helfen, heißen, lehren, lernen, the infinitive is used without zu:—

Ich muß nach Berlin schreiben, I must write to Berlin
Er half mir arbeiten, He helped me to work

The verbs hören, to hear, sehen, to see, followed by an active verb, are followed by the infinitive without zu:—

Ich sah ihn einen Brief schreiben, I saw him writing a letter

N.B.—As may be seen by this last sentence, the English present participle cannot be used after another verb.

144. When the English preposition *to* is used in the sense of *for to*, *in order to*, it should be rendered by *um* with *zu* before the verb, as:—

Er hat alles angewendet um He has done everything to
seine Gesundheit wieder her- (in order to) recover his
zustellen health

145. Instead of the *Past Participle*, the *Infinitive* is generally used of dürfen, to dare; können, to be able; lassen, to let; mögen, to be willing; müssen, to be obliged; sollen, ought; wollen, to wish; helfen, to help; hören, to hear; lernen, to learn; sehen, to see; when those verbs are followed by an infinitive, as:—

Ich habe nicht schreiben dürfen I have not dared to write
 (instead of gebürft)
 Er hat mir sagen lassen, He sent word to me

THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

146. *The Imperfect of the Indicative* is the German Historical tense, as:—

| | |
|--|--|
| Alexander griff mit vierzig tausend Mann den Darius an, welcher sechsmal hundert tausend hatte; er schlug ihn zwei mal, und nahm dessen Mutter, Gemahlin und Tochter gefangen, | Alexander attacked Darius with forty thousand men, who had six hundred thousand; he beat him twice, and took his mother, wife, and daughter prisoners. |
|--|--|

It is also used in speaking of an event of which we have been an eye witness:—

Ich sah ihn fallen, I saw him fall

147. But the *Perfect*, (*compound of the Present*) is used, if we merely relate an event or circumstance without having been present:—*

Ist ihre Schwester da gewesen, Has your sister been there

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Some expressions require sometimes the Indicative, and sometimes the Subjunctive, according as they are turned:—

| | |
|---|--|
| Er mag so reich seyn als er will, (<i>Ind.</i>) | Er sey so reich als er wolle, (<i>Subj.</i>) |
|---|--|

However rich he may be

148. Frequently the present subjunctive with daß is

* Unless we add sagte er or sagte man, for then the imperfect may be used.

used instead of the Imperative, as:—

| | |
|--|---|
| Sinder daß ihr artig seyd, | Children be good |
| Daß Alles fertig sey, wann wir wieder kommen, | Let everything be ready- against we return |

149. *The Subjunctive* is also used when the sense is vague or doubtful.

150. *The Imperfect Subjunctive* is used after—

1st. The conjunction *wenn*, *if*; answering to a conditional,* as:—

| | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| Wenn ich reich wäre, so heirathete ich sie | If I were rich I would marry her |
|--|----------------------------------|

2nd. To express a wish, or when the conjunction *if*, *wenn*, is understood,

| | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| Wäre ich reich! | If I were rich |
| Hätte ich Bücher! | Ah! if I had books! |

3rd. In indirect questions; or relating a question made to us, as:—

| | |
|---|--|
| Er fragte mich, ob ich nicht der und der wäre, ob ich nicht Geld hätte, warum ich nicht schreiben könnte | He asked me if I were not such a person, if I had no money, why I could not write |
|---|--|

151. This tense is often used to express a conditional:
Ich ässe gern, wenn ich dürfte I would like to eat if I dared

THE IMPERATIVE.

152. The pronouns of the second persons are generally omitted, but when we address a person in the third person, the pronouns should be used after the verb; as,

* *Wenn* not used in a conditional sense, answers to the conjunction *as*, and must be followed by the indicative:—

| | |
|--|--|
| Wenn er nicht krank ist, warum läßt er den Doktor kommen | If he is not ill, why does he send for the doctor. |
|--|--|

| | |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| Sagen Sie mir, mein Herr | Tell me, Sir |
| Kommet, und sehet | Come and see |

153. When the imperative is used to exhort, the verb lassen should precede it, as :—

| | |
|--|----------------------------|
| Lasset uns gehen | Let us go |
| Lassen Sie uns einen Spaziergang machen | Let us go and take a walk. |

154. N.B.—Very frequently the imperative is accompanied by doch, ja, or gefälligst. The first word has then the sense of *pray*, or *I beg you* ; the second serves* to impress upon the person not to fail in doing what is told him ; and the third expression signifies, *if you please*, as :—

| | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| Sagen Sie mir doch | Tell me |
| Gehen Sie ja hin | Do not forget to go |
| Geben Sie mir gefälligst. | Be so kind as to give me. |

PARTICIPLES.

155. *The Present Participle* is seldom used verbally, and when thus used in English, it should be turned by a nominative with some conjunction or adverb, using the verb in the tense required by the sense.

Examples.

| | |
|--|--|
| Als Heinrich der Vierte einst auf der Jagd war, | Henry the fourth being one day hunting |
| Da wir kein Geld mehr hatten, mussten wir aufhören, | Not having any more money, we were obliged to give up |

* *Ja* is also used to express consolation or hope ; as,

| | |
|---|--|
| Bekümmert euch nicht so sehr, er ist ja nicht todt | Do not afflict yourself so much, he is not dead yet |
| Ich habe ja noch Freunde | I have still some friend. |

Examples Continued.

| | |
|--|--|
| Weil ich die Ehre nicht haben kann mit Ihnen zu sprechen, so nehme ich mir die Freyheit Ihnen zu schreiben, | Not being able to have the honour to speak with you, I take the liberty to write to you |
| Wenn ich an meinen Oheim schreibe, bin ich versichert, daß ich Geld bekomme, | By writing to my uncle, I am sure to receive money |
| Er entschuldigte sich und sagte, Ich fand ihn schlafen, Er schlief als ich ihn fand, } Er kam gelaufen, | He excused himself, saying I found him sleeping He came running |
| Nach dem Tode meines Vaters, | My father being dead |

156. But the present participle is very much used adjectively, in which case it follows all the rules for agreement, as that part of speech:—

| | |
|---|---|
| Der Sterbende Vater sprach also zu seinem Sohne, | The dying father thus spoke to his son |
|---|---|

157. *The Past Participle.*—The auxiliary used with a past participle, is generally omitted at the end of a clause, if the next clause begin with an auxiliary, as:—

| | |
|--|--|
| Ob ich gleich niemals zu Paris gewesen, so bin ich doch von allem unterrichtet, was da- selbst vorgeht, | Although I have never been to Paris, I am however in- formed of all that occurs there |
|--|--|

158. The past participle is frequently used in German, where it would not be used in English, especially in epistolary style, and in sublime writings, as:—

| | |
|---|---|
| Aus ihrem, unterm zehnten dieses an mich ergangenen Schreiben erseehe ich, daß alle meine bey | Your letter of the tenth of this month informs me, that all my goods which were |
|---|---|

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>Ihnen gelegene Waaren verkauft sind; daß der von mir gefetzte Preis angenommen und baar bezahlt worden, und daß ich den davon gezogenen Betrag, nach Abzug der gehabtten Unkosten, in der Summe von 1516 Gulden auf Sie entnehmen kann,</p> | <p>consigned to you have been sold, and that the prices I fixed were accepted and paid in cash; and that I can draw upon you for the balance of 1516 florins, after deduction has been made for the expenses incurred.</p> |
|--|--|

159. The present participle is often used to denote a future :—

Die zu bezahlenden Schulden, The debts to be paid

160. The past participle is employed for the imperative by way of exciting or encouraging :—

| | |
|------------|---------------|
| Getrunken, | Let us drink |
| Gespielt, | Come, play |
| Gefahren, | Let us be off |

It is also used in expressions like the following :—

| | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| Daß heißt gearbeitet, | That is what you call working |
| Daß heißt gelogen, | That is what is called lying |

N.B.—Many of the above remarks are not to be found in Meidinger, but in many instances in this work, the translator has consulted other works, and has added observations of his own, whenever he thought it would be an improvement, or a useful addition by which the student might be benefitted.

EXERCISE XX.

On some Regular Verbs.

N.B.—Verbs marked with an asterisk (*) are irregular.

Do you learn music? Yes, Sir, I learn it. Do you like it? Yes, I am very fond of it. Do you sometimes play

the violin? Yes, and my sisters the harpsichord. When we departed from Berlin, the weather was beautiful; the moon shone through silvery clouds, the stars glittered, we sang, our horses neighed, and the postilion blew the horn. How long have you learned German? About two months. Indeed, you speak very well for so short a time. I also learned German, but, for want of practice, I have quite forgotten it. I do not believe that you have forgotten much. Without joking, I spoke it a little, and I would have written exercises if I had had any. How many exercises do you translate every day? If the exercises are not difficult, I translate two or three daily, and if they are, I only translate one. How many have you done today? This is the first. I spoke yesterday with your brother; he speaks better than I. I should speak better than I do, if I were not so timid. To speak German you must not be timid. But there are people who laugh when I speak. They are unpolite people; you have only to laugh also, and they will not laugh at you. I will follow your counsel.

My neighbour always treats his friends well; he treated us splendidly the other day. He knows that one good dinner procures him twenty others. I think one cannot oblige most men better than by those marks of friendship. We always talk a good deal at table, but we think little; not to disarrange our digestion.

You dance and sing very well. You are joking. Indeed I do not joke. Let us change our conversation. Well, what do you think of the man who spoke to us yesterday at the concert? I do not know what to think of him; why do you ask me that?

This world is a true comedy, where one half of the actors laughs at the other.

Democrates and Heraclites were two philosophers of a very different character ; the first laughed at the extravagances and follies of men, and the other wept for them. They were both right, for the follies and errors of men deserve to be laughed at and wept for.

You will not praise me because I have refused your request, but you would praise me if I had granted it you. You have guessed it. If you send me the books back which I lent you, I will lend you some others. You would do the same if you were in my place.

Obey your teachers, and never give them any trouble. Pay me what you owe me. Console the unfortunate, and do good to those who have offended you. Love God, and your neighbour as yourself. Do not wish for what you cannot have, but be satisfied with what* Providence has given you ; and consider that there are many people who have not what you have. Life is short, therefore let us endeavour to make it as agreeable as we can ; but let us reflect also, that the abuse of pleasures embitters it. Let us love and always practise virtue.

We shall breakfast this morning in the garden, the weather is so fine. We must profit by it, Spring is soon over. Let us sit down to enjoy this beautiful prospect.

* Was transposes the nominative verb after the participle, and the pronoun governed by the participle precedes the participle.

EXPLANATIONS.

To like, lieben; to be very fond, sehr lieben; to play the violin, Violin spielen; the harpsichord, das Klavier; when, da; to depart, abreisen; the weather was delightful, war es schönes Wetter; to shine, leuchten; silvery clouds, Silberwölkchen; to glitter, funkeln; to sing, singen; to neigh, wiehern; the postilion, der Postknecht; blew his horn, blies sein Horn; to learn, lernen; indeed, in Wahrheit; for so short a time, für diese kurze Zeit; for want of practice, aus Mangel an Übung; I have, habe ich;* forgotten, vergessen; to believe, glauben; without joking, im Ernste; (ohne zu scherzen) an exercise, eine Aufgabe; (n) How many, wie viel; to translate, übersetzen; difficult, schwer; daily, des Tages; (täglich) to do, machen; with, mit (*dat.*) not so timid, nicht so blöde; (versagt, fürchtam) you must not, muß man nicht; but there are, aber es gibt; people, Leute; unpolite, unhöflich; you have only to laugh also, Sie müssen nur auch lachen; and they will not laugh at you, so wird man sich nicht mehr über Sie aufhalten, or, so wird man Ihrer nicht mehr spotten; to follow, befolgen; counsel, der Rath; to treat, bewirthen; well, gut; splendidly, herrlich; he knows, er weiß; to procure, verschaffen; one cannot, man kann — nicht; most men, die meisten Menschen; to oblige, verpflichten; than by such marks of friendship, als durch solche Freundschaftsbezeugungen; at table, über Tisch, or bei Tische; to think, denken; not to disarrange our digestion, um die Verdauung nicht zu stören; to dance, tanzen; to joke, scherzen; let us change our conversation, lassen Sie uns von etwas Anderem reden; spoke to us, mit uns — sprach; I do not know what to

* Transposition of the nominative after *aus*. See *Construction*.

think of him, ich weiß nicht was ich von ihm denken soll; to ask, fragen; a true comedy, eine wahre Komödie; the actor, der Schauspieler; at, über; extravagances, die Thorheiten; follies, die Narrheiten; to weep, weinen; the error, der Irrthum; to deserve, verdienen; because I have refused your request, weil ich Ihr Begehren abgeschlagen habe; to grant, bewilligen; to guess, errathen; you would do the same, Sie würden es eben so machen; in my place, an meiner Stelle; to obey, gehorchen (*dat.*); teacher, Lehrer; to give trouble, (to vex) Verdruss machen; to pay, bezahlen; to owe, schuldig seyn; to console, trösten; the unfortunate, der Unglückliche; (n.) to do good, gutes thun; to offend, beleidigen; the neighbour, (fellow creature) der Nächste; to wish, wünschen; what you cannot have, das was Ihr nicht haben könnet; be satisfied begnüget euch; with what, mit dem, was; Providence, die Vorsehung; consider, bedenket; therefore, deswegen; to endeavour, trachten; as agreeable as we can, so angenehm — als es möglich ist; let us reflect, laßt uns bedenken; the abuse, der Mißbrauch; the pleasures, die Vergnügungen; to embitter, bitter machen; to practise, ausüben; to breakfast, frühstücken; we must profit by it, man muß es benützen; is soon over, geht sehr geschwind vorüber; to sit down, sich setzen; to enjoy, genießen.

161 CONJUGATION OF A PASSIVE VERB,

Gelobt werden, to be praised.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

Gelobt werden, to be praised Gelobt worden seyn, to have
been praised

Gerund.

Gelobt zu werden, being Gelobt worden zu seyn, having
praised been praised

Um gelobt zu werden, for to be Um gelobt worden zu seyn, for
praised having been praised

Ohne gelobt zu werden, with- Ohne gelobt worden zu seyn,
out being praised. without having been prai-
sed.

*Present Participle.**Past Participle.*

In dem man gelobt wird, be- Gelobt worden,* been praised.
ing praised.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Ich werde gelobt, I am praised Daß ich gelobt werde, that I
du wirst gelobt, thou art prai- may be praised

sed daß du gelobt werdest, that thou
er wird gelobt, he is praised mayest be praised

* *Werden* used in the sense of *to become*, has for past participle *geworden*.

Present Continued.

| | |
|---|---|
| wir werden gelobt, we are praised | daß er gelobt werde, that he may be praised |
| ihr werdet gelobt, ye are praised | daß wir gelobt werden, that we may be praised |
| sie werden gelobt, they are praised. | daß ihr gelobt werdet, that ye may be praised daß sie gelobt werden, that they may be praised. |

Imperfect.

| | |
|--|---|
| Ich wurde gelobt, I was praised | Daß ich gelobt würde, that I might be praised |
| du wurdest gelobt, thou wast praised | daß du gelobt würdest, that thou mightest be praised |
| er wurde gelobt, he was prai- sed | daß er gelobt würde, that he might be praised |
| wir wurden gelobt, we were praised | daß wir gelobt würden, that we might be praised |
| ihr wurdet gelobt, ye were praised | daß ihr gelobt würdet, that ye might be praised |
| sie wurden gelobt, they were praised. | daß sie gelobt würden, that they might be praised. |

Perfect.

| | |
|--|---|
| Ich bin gelobt worden, I have been praised | Daß ich gelobt worden sey, that I may have been praised |
| du bist gelobt worden, thou hast been praised | daß du gelobt worden seyeſt, that thou mayest have been praised |
| er iſt gelobt worden, he has been praised | daß er gelobt worden sey, that he may have been prai- sed |
| wir ſind gelobt worden, we have been praised | daß wir gelobt worden ſeyn, that we may have been praised |
| ihr ſeyd gelobt worden, ye have been praised | |

Perfect Continued.

| | |
|--|--|
| sie sind gelobt worden, they have been praised. | daß ihr gelobt worden seyd, that ye may have been praised daß sie gelobt worden seyn, that they may have been prais- ed. |
|--|--|

Plusperfect.

| | |
|---|--|
| Ich war gelobt worden, I had been praised | Daß ich gelobt worden wäre, that I might have been praised |
| du warest gelobt worden, thou hadst been praised | daß du gelobt worden wärest that thou mightest have been praised |
| er war gelobt worden, he had been praised | daß er gelobt worden wäre, that he might have been praised |
| wir waren gelobt worden, we had been praised | daß wir gelobt worden wären, that we might have been praised |
| ihr waret gelobt worden, ye had been praised | daß ihr gelobt worden wäret, that ye might have been praised |
| sie waren gelobt worden, they had been praised. | daß sie gelobt worden wären, that they might have been praised. |

Future.

| | |
|--|---|
| Ich werde gelobt werden, I shall be praised | Daß ich werde gelobt werden, that I shall be praised |
| du wirst gelobt werden, thou shalt be praised | daß du werdest gelobt werden, that thou shalt be praised |
| er wird gelobt werden, he shall be praised | daß er werde gelobt werden, that he shall be praised |
| wir werden gelobt werden, we shall be praised | daß wir werden gelobt werden, that we shall be praised |

Future Continued.

| | |
|--|---|
| ihr werdet gelobt werden, ye shall be praised | daß ihr werdet gelobt werden, that ye shall be praised |
| sie werden gelobt werden, they shall be praised. | daß sie werden gelobt werden, that they shall be praised. |

Future Past.

| | |
|--|--|
| Ich werde gelobt worden seyn, I shall have been praised | Wenn ich werde gelobt worden seyn, when I shall have been praised |
| du wirst gelobt worden seyn, thou shalt have been praised | wann du werdest gelobt worden seyn, when thou shalt have been praised |
| er wird gelobt worden seyn, he shall have been praised | wann er werde gelobt worden seyn, when he shall have been praised |
| wir werden gelobt worden seyn, we shall have been praised | wann wir werden gelobt worden seyn, when we shall have been praised |
| ihr werdet gelobt worden seyn, ye shall have been praised | wann ihr werdet gelobt worden seyn, when ye shall have been praised |
| sie werden gelobt worden seyn, they shall have been praised. | wann sie werden gelobt worden seyn, when they shall have been praised. |

Conditional.

| | |
|--|--|
| Ich würde gelobt werden, I should be praised | Ich würde gelobt worden seyn, I should have been praised |
| du würdest gelobt werden, thou shouldst be praised | du würdest gelobt worden seyn, thou shouldst have been praised |
| er würde gelobt werden, he should be praised | |

Conditional Continued.

| | |
|--|---|
| wir würden gelobt werden, we should be praised | er würde gelobt worden seyn, he should have been prais- ed |
| ihr würdet gelobt werden, ye should be praised | wir würden gelobt worden seyn, we should have been praised |
| sie würden gelobt werden, they should be praised. | ihr würdet gelobt worden seyn, ye should have been praised |
| | sie würden gelobt worden seyn, they should have been praised. |

REMARKS.

162. *The Passive voice* denotes not that a thing is finished, but that it is undergoing the action expressed by the verb; therefore, when I say *Dieses Buch ist gedruckt*, this book is printed, my meaning is, that it is fit for publication; but when I say, *Dieses Buch wird gedruckt*, my meaning implies that it is printing: notice also the following.

| | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| Die Zeitung ist gelesen | } The newspaper is read | |
| Die Zeitung wird gelesen | | |
| Der Dieb ist schon gehängt | | The thief is already hung |
| Der Dieb wird jetzt gehängt | | The thief is now hung. |

EXERCISE XXI.

Upon some Passive Verbs.

My brother is beloved and praised by every body, because he is industrious and studious; but yours is hated and despised, because he is idle and mischievous. Charles,

I said to him the other day, you have been punished to-day for having been naughty; and to-morrow you will be so if you do not correct yourself: but if you correct yourself you shall be loved and rewarded.

Clever people are esteemed and sought, but the ignorant are generally despised by every body; and it is very sad to be despised. In order not to be despised, learn in your youth good and useful things, and (so) you will be honoured and praised. In short be virtuous; for virtue is always rewarded, because it rewards itself.

EXPLANATIONS.

Because, weil; industrious, fleißig; to hate, hassen; to despise, verachten; idle, faul; mischievous, unartig; I said to him lately, sagte ich neulich zu ihm; to punish, straffen; for having been naughty, weil du unartig gewesen bist; to correct one's self, sich verbessern; to reward, belohnen; clever people, die geschickten Leute; to esteem, schätzen; sought, gesucht; the ignorant, die Unwissenden; generally, gewöhnlich; very sad, sehr traurig; in order, um; in your youth, in Euer Jugend; useful, nützlich; things, Dinge; to honour, ehren; in short, übrigens; virtuous, tugendhaft; virtue, die Tugend; always, immer; because it rewards itself, weil sie sich selbst belohnet.

163.

NEUTER VERBS.

Are either regular or irregular; some take the auxiliary haben, and others Seyn, for their compound tenses; they will be explained in the list of neuter verbs, a few pages further on.

164. REFLECTIVE VERBS.

These verbs are conjugated the same as other verbs with the only difference, that they have besides the nominative, the pronouns:—

| | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| miß, myself | unß, ourselves |
| biß, thyself | euß, yourself or selves |
| fiß, him or herself | fiß, themselves |

which are placed after the verb in the simple tenses; before the participle in the compound tenses; before the infinitive in the future and conditional; and immediately after the nominative in the subjunctive mood.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.*Present.*

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| Sich freuen, to rejoice. | Sich gefreuet haben, to have rejoiced. |
|--------------------------|--|

Gerund.

| | |
|---|--|
| Sich zu freuen, to rejoice | Sich gefreuet zu haben, to have rejoiced |
| um sich zu freuen, for to rejoice | |
| ohne sich zu freuen, without rejoicing. | um sich gefreuet zu haben, for to have rejoiced |
| | ohne sich gefreuet zu haben without having rejoiced. |

INDICATIVE MOOD.**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.***Present Tense.*

| | |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Ich freue mich, I rejoice | Daß ich mich freue, that I may rejoice |
| du freuest dich, thou rejoicest | |
| er freuet sich, he rejoices | daß du dich freuest, that thou mayest rejoice |
| wir freuen unß, we rejoice | |

* And whenever the sentence begins with a transpositive word. See *Construction*.

Present Continued.

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| ihr freuet euch, ye rejoice | daß er sich freue, that he may rejoice |
| sie freuen sich, they rejoice. | |
| | daß wir uns freuen, that we may rejoice |
| | daß ihr euch freuet, that ye may rejoice |
| | daß sie sich freuen, that they may rejoice. |

Imperfect.

| | |
|---|---|
| Ich freuete mich, I rejoiced, or was rejoicing | Daß ich mich freuete, that I might rejoice |
| du freuetest dich, thou rejoicedst, or wast rejoicing | daß du dich freuetest, that thou mightest rejoice |
| er freute sich, he rejoiced or was rejoicing | daß er sich freute, that he might rejoice |
| wir freueten uns, we rejoiced or were rejoicing | daß wir uns freueten, that we might rejoice |
| ihr freuetet euch, ye rejoiced or were rejoicing | daß ihr euch freuetet, that ye might rejoice |
| sie freueten sich, they rejoiced or were rejoicing. | daß sie sich freueten, that they might rejoice. |

Perfect.

| | |
|---|--|
| Ich habe mich gefreuet, I have rejoiced | Daß ich mich gefreuet habe, that I may have rejoiced |
| du hast dich gefreuet, thou hast rejoiced | daß du dich gefreuet habest, that thou mayst have rejoiced |
| er hat sich gefreuet, he has rejoiced | daß er sich gefreuet habe, that he may have rejoiced |
| wir haben uns gefreuet, we have rejoiced | daß wir uns gefreuet haben, that we may have rejoiced |

Perfect Continued.

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>ihr habet euch gefreuet, ye have rejoiced</p> <p>sie haben sich gefreuet, they have rejoiced.</p> | <p>daß ihr euch gefreuet habet, that you may have rejoiced</p> <p>daß sie sich gefreuet haben, that they may have rejoiced.</p> |
|--|---|

Pluperfect.

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>Ich hatte mich gefreuet, I had rejoiced, &c.</p> | <p>Daß ich mich gefreuet hätte, that I might have rejoiced, &c.</p> |
|---|---|

Future.

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>Ich werde mich freuen, I shall or will rejoice, &c.</p> | <p>Daß ich mich freuen werde, that I shall rejoice, &c.</p> |
|--|---|

Future Past.

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>Ich werde mich gefreuet haben, I shall have rejoiced, &c.</p> | <p>Daß ich mich gefreuet haben werde, that I shall have rejoiced, &c.</p> |
|--|---|

Conditional.

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>Ich würde mich freuen, I should, could, would, or might rejoice, &c.</p> | <p>Ich würde mich gefreuet haben, that I should, could, would, or might have rejoiced, &c.</p> |
|---|--|

Imperative.

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Freue dich, rejoice | Freuen wir uns, } let us re- |
| daß er sich freue, } let him re- | laß uns uns freuen, } joice |
| freue er sich, } joice | freuet euch, rejoice ye |
| freue sie sich, let her rejoice. | freuen sie sich, } let them |
| | daß sie sich freuen, } rejoice. |

Remark.—A reflexive is known by its having sich before it in the Infinitive : as,

| | |
|---|---|
| Sich befinden, to be, to do, (when speaking of the state of health) | sich bestimmem, to be anxious, to care |
| sich bemühen, to try | sich getrauen, } to dare |
| sich fürchten, to fear | sich unterstehen, } |
| sich aufhalten, to sojourn | sich stellen, to pretend |
| sich schämen, to be ashamed | sich verstellen, to dissimulate |
| sich irren, to be mistaken. | sich verfärben, to change colour. |

165. The following expressions are worthy of notice.

| | |
|--|---|
| Sich krank essen, trinken, &c. | To make one's self ill by eating, drinking, &c. |
| sich heiser reden, | To talk one's self hoarse |
| sich arm bauen, | To ruin one's self by building |
| sich aus dem Athem laufen, | To run one's self out of breath |
| sich arm saufen, | To ruin one's self by drinking |
| sich aus einem Handel heraus lügen. | To lie one's self out of a difficulty. |

EXERCISE XXII.

On some Reflective Verbs.

Good morning, my dear friend, how do you do? I am to-day as I was yesterday, that is to say, very ill. Why did you then rise? I thought (that) I should be better out of bed. But I will go to bed again, my head feels giddy. Sir, I always flattered myself that you loved me as much as I loved you; but I now see that I was mistaken. I perceive that you are offended, because I took a walk with your cousin. I inquired of your physician the cause of your illness, and he told me (that) he suspected that jealousy caused your indisposition. I confess (that) that surprised me much, for your jealousy is only imaginary.

I intended to rise every morning at six o'clock, and to go to bed every night at ten.

EXPLANATIONS.

How do you do, wie befinden Sie sich; that is to say, nämlich; ill, übel to rise, aufstehen; (*See the Compound Verb, some pages on*) I thought, ich dachte; out of bed, ausser dem Bette; to go to bed again, sich wieder nieder legen; my head feels giddy, es wird mir schwindlich; to flatter one's self, sich schmeicheln; as much as, so sehr als; to perceive, gewahr werden; to be offended with somebody, auf (über) Jemanden böse seyn; because I took a walk, weil ich spazieren gegangen bin; to inquire of some one about something, sich bei Jemanden nach etwas erkundigen; the illness, die Krankheit; to suspect, mutmaßen; jealousy, die Eifersucht; to cause, verursachen; indisposition, das Uebel; to confess, (to avow) gestehen; to surprise some one, einen in Verwunderung setzen; is only imaginary, besteht nur in der Einbildung; to intend, sich vornehmen; every morning, alle Morgen; at six o'clock, um sechs Uhr; to go to bed, schlafen gehen, or zu Bette gehen; every night, alle Abend.

166. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

These verbs are conjugated only in the third person singular: like other verbs they are regular or irregular. Example:—

Regnen, to rain

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Es regnet, it rains

Daß es regne, that it may
rain

Imperfect.

Es regnete, it did rain Daß es regnete, that it might
rain

Perfect.

Es hat geregnet, it has rained Daß es geregnet habe, it may
have rained

Pluperfect.

Es hatte geregnet, it had rained Daß es geregnet hätte, it might
have rained

Future.

Es wird regnen, it will rain Daß es regnen werde, that it
will rain.

Past Future.

Es wird geregnet haben, it will Daß es werde geregnet haben,
have rained. that it shall have rained.

Conditional.

Es würde regnen, it would Es würde geregnet haben, it
rain. would have rained.

167. *Remark.*—The Impersonal verbs *there is, there are, it is*, are expressed by *es ist* or *es gibt*, as :—

Es ist ungefähr zwei Monate, It is about two months

Es gibt Leute, welche sagen, There are people who say

168. List of Impersonal verbs most in use :—

Es hagelt, it hails

es ist windig, it blows

es schneiet, it snows

es reifet, there is a rime frost

es blißet, it lightens

es hat eingeschlagen, a thunder-
bolt has fallen

es frieret, it freezes

es thauet, it thaws

es kömmt darauf an, it depends

es nebelt, it is foggy

on

| | | |
|---|-------------------|--------------|
| es ist warm, it is warm | es begibt sich, | } it happens |
| es ist heiß, it is hot | es geschieht, | |
| es ist kalt, it is cold | es trägt sich zu, | |
| es ist schönes Wetter, it is fine weather | es gebührt sich, | } it becomes |
| es ist schlimmes Wetter, it is bad weather | es geziemet sich, | |

169. The following take the personal pronoun after them, either in the accusative or dative. Those that take the accusative are:—

| | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Es hungert mich, I am hungry | es freuet mich, I am glad |
| es durstet mich, I am thirsty | es befremdet mich, it is strange |
| es frieret mich, I am cold | es wundert mich, I wonder |
| es verbriest mich, I am sorry | es reuet mich, I am vexed |
| es schauert mich, I shudder | es verlangt mich, I long |
| es schlüfert mich, I am sleepy | es dünk(e)t mich, it seems |

They are thus conjugated:—

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Es hungert mich,* I am hungry | es hungert uns, we are hungry |
| es hungert dich, thou art hun- gry | es hungert euch, you are hun- gry |
| es hungert ihn, he is hungry | es hungert sie, they are hun- gry. |
| es hungert sie, she is hungry | |

170. Those that take the dative are:—

| | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Es ist mir angst, | I fear |
| es ist mir lieb, | I am glad |
| er ist (thut) mir leid, | I am sorry |
| es scheint mir, | It appears to me |
| es deucht mir, | } I imagine, it seems to me |
| es kömmt mir vor, | |
| es gefällt mir, | } It pleases me |
| es beliebt mir, | |

* You may also say, Ich habe hunger; literally I have hunger.

| | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| es begegnet mir, | It happens to me |
| es behaget mir, | } It does me good |
| es beföhmt mir wohl, | |
| es efelt mir, | It disgusts me |
| es fällt mir leicht, | It is easy for me |
| es gebühret mir, | It is my right |
| es grauet mir, | I am horror struck |
| es ist mir warm, | I am warm |
| es ist mir wohl, | I am well |
| es ist mir übel, | I feel ill |
| es gehöret mir, | It belongs to me |
| es gehet mir wohl, | } I succeed |
| es gelingt mir, | |
| es glückt mir, | |
| es mangelt mir, | } I want |
| es fehlt mir an, | |
| es mißlingt mir, | } It does not succeed to me |
| es mißrät mir, | |
| es hat mir geträumet, | I dreamt |

They are thus conjugated :—

| | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| es ist mir angst, | es ist uns angst, |
| es ist dir angst, | es ist euch angst, |
| es ist ihm angst, | es ist ihnen angst. |
| es ist ihr angst, | |

171. Remark.—When the impersonal verb *it is* expresses a general report, that is, if it is used in the sense of *one, people, somebody*, it is expressed by *man* with the next verb in the third person singular :—

Man sagt, it is said

Man glaubt, it is believed

EXERCISE XXIII.

On Impersonal Verbs.

It snows to-day, it snowed yesterday, and according to all appearances it will snow to-morrow. Let it snow; I

wish it would snow still more, and that it froze, for I am always well when it is very cold. And I am very well when it is neither cold nor warm. There is too much wind to-day. It is very early yet; too early to go home. What village is that? I think it is Schmierbach? Is there good wine there? I think so. How long have you been in Germany? (It is) about a year. Is it possible? Do you know that young lady? It is my cousin. If it were not so warm I would dance with her. You are always hungry, and your brother is always thirsty. Are you sleepy. No, but I am cold.

EXPLANATIONS.

According to all appearances, allem Anschein nach; let it snow, es mag schneien; I wish, Ich wollte; still more, noch mehr; very, recht; neither—nor, weder—noch; too much, zu; early, frühe; What village is that, was ist das für ein Dorf; there, darin; how long have you been, wie lange sind sie nun; do you know, kennen Sie; a young lady, eine Jungfer. (n.) or ein Fräulein.

172. IRREGULAR VERBS.

Irregular Verbs are those which deviate in some of their persons or tenses from the general rules which have been given. This irregularity occurs, in all irregular verbs, in the Imperfect of the Indicative and the Subjunctive, in the Past Participle, and in the second person singular of the Imperative. The other tenses are conjugated after the model given No. 140. Most of these verbs change the radical vowel of the Past Participle, some change the consonant, and others remain unchanged.

The Imperfect Subjunctive of irregular verbs is formed

from the Imperfect Indicative; by changing the radical vowels a, o, u, into ä, ö, ü; as *Ich kam*, I came; *daß ich käme*, that I might come; *Ich goß*, I poured; *daß ich gösse*, that I might pour; *Ich trug*, I carried; *daß ich trüge*, that I might carry. If these vowels are not found in the Indicative, then the Imperfect Subjunctive is formed by merely adding e to the Imperfect Subjunctive; as *Ich blieb* I remained; *daß ich bliebe*, that I might remain.

EXAMPLES.

Imperfect Indicative.

Ich bucht
du buchest
er bucht
wir buchen
ihr buchet
sie buchen

ich biß
du bistest
er biß
wir bissen
ihr bisset
sie bissen

Imperfect Subjunctive.

ich bücte
du bücest
er bücte
wir büceten
ihr bücetet
sie büceten

ich biße
du bistest
er biße
wir bissen
ihr bisset
sie bissen

Any deviation from the above rule will be noticed in foot notes.

173. Some verbs are irregular in the *second* and *third persons* singular of the Present Indicative: this irregularity is by changing the radical vowel a into ä; o into ö; and e into ie, or i; as:—

| | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>Ich</i> schlafe, | <i>du</i> schläfst, | <i>er</i> schläft |
| <i>Ich</i> komme, | <i>du</i> kommst, | <i>er</i> kommt |
| <i>Ich</i> werfe, | <i>du</i> wirfst, | <i>er</i> wirft |
| <i>Ich</i> spreche, | <i>du</i> sprichst, | <i>er</i> spricht |
| <i>Ich</i> befehle, | <i>du</i> befehlest, | <i>er</i> befehlt |

174. The plural of the Present Indicative is always regular.

175. The second person singular of the Imperative is formed from the same person of the Present Indicative by leaving out *st*: it is only irregular when the second person of the Indicative changes *e* into *i*, or *ie*; as:—

Ich werfe, I throw Wirf, throw thou
Du wirfst, thou throwest

176. The vowels *ä*, *ö*, of the second person of the Indicative become *a*, *o*, in the Imperative; as:—

Schlafe, sleep thou, du schläfest, thou sleepest

177. Compound verbs are conjugated like the verbs they are derived from; as:—

Berthun, to spend, like thun, to do

178 Except the following, which are regular, although their primitives are irregular; as:—

| | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Bewillkommen, to give a reception | Handhaben, to maintain |
| herbergen, to harbour, to lodge | rabbrechen, to break on the wheel |
| rathschlagen, to deliberate | umringen, to surround |
| veranlassen, to occasion | willfahren, to acquiesce |

And the following are irregular, although their primitives are regular:—

| | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| Befehlen, to command | empfehlen, to recommend |
| erschallen, to resound | verbleichen, to grow pale |

179. LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> | <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Imperative.</i> |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| Baden, to bake | gebaden | du bädst* | ich bad | bad |
| bedingen, to stipulate | bedungen | | — bedung | bedinge |
| befehlen, to command | befohlen | du befehlst | — befaß † | befiehl |
| sich befehlen, to apply | beffihen | | — beffiß | befieiß |
| beißen, to bite | gebiffen | | — biß | beiß |
| bergen, to hide | geborgen | du birgst | — barg † | birg |
| beginnen, to begin | begonnen | | — begann § | beginne |
| bersten, to burst | geborften | | — barft or borft | berfte |
| befinnen, (sich) to remember | befonnen | | ich befann | befinne |
| betrügen, to deceive | betrogen | | — betrog | betrüge |
| bewegen, to move to persuade | bewogen | | — bewog | bewege |
| biegen, to bend | gebogen | | — bog | biege |
| bieten, to offer | geboten | | — bot | biete |
| binden, to tie | gebunden | | — band | binde |
| bitten, to pray | gebeten | | — bat | bitte |
| blasen, to blow | geblasen | du bläseft | — bließ | blafe |
| bleiben, to remain | geblieben | | — blieb | bleibe |
| braten, to roast | gebraten | du brätft | — briet or bratete | brate |
| brechen, to break | gebrochen | du brichft | — brach | brich |
| brennen, to burn | gebrannt | | — brannte | brenne |
| bringen, to bring | gebracht | | — brachte | bringe |
| denken, to think | gedacht | | — dachte | denke |

* The second person singular will be sufficient to show the irregularity of verbs that change their radical vowel, as Ich badte, du bädst, er bädt. See Rule 173.

† Subj. beföhle.

‡ Subj. bürge.

§ Subj. begönne or begünne.

|| When this verb means to move in the physical sense, it is regular.

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> | <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Imperative.</i> |
|----------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| dürfen, to dare | gebürft | ich darf du darfst er darf | — durfte | |
| dröſchen, to thrash | gedröſchen | du dröſcheſt | — dröſch | dröſch |
| bringen, to throng | gebrungen | | — drang | bringe |
| durchbringen, to penetrate | like drin= gen | | or drung | |
| entſprechen, to answer to | like ſpre= chen | | | |
| empfehlen, to re= commend | like befeh= len | | empfehl* | empfehl |
| empfinden, to perceive | empfunben | | empfanb | empfinde |
| empfangen, to receive | empfangen | du empfängſt | empfang | empfange |
| erblicken, to grow pale | erblicken | | erblich | erblicke |
| erbrechen, to break | like bre= chen | | | |
| erfinden, to in= vent | like finden | | | |
| erſchaffen, to create | like ſchaf= fen | | | |
| erſchallen, to spread | erſchallen | | es erſcholl | |
| erſchießen, to shoot | like ſchieß= en | | | |
| erſinnen, to in= vent | like ſin= nen | | | |
| erſchrecken, to be frightened | erſchrocken | du erſchrückſt | erſchrack | erſchrück |
| erwegen, to con= sider | erwogen | du iſſeſt or iſt | erwog | erwege |
| essen, to eat | gegeſſen | | aß | iß |
| fahren, to ride in a carriage | gefahren | du fährſt | fuhr | fahre |
| fallen, to fall | gefallen | du fälltſt | fiel | falle |
| fangen, to catch | gefangen | du fängſt | fieng | fange |

*Subj. empföle.

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> | <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Imperative.</i> |
|------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|--------------------|
| fechten, to fight | gefechten | du fichtst | focht | fechte or ficht |
| finden, to find | gefunden | | fanb | finde |
| flechten, to braid | geflechten | | flocht | flicht |
| fliegen, to fly* | geflogen | | flog | fliege |
| fliehen, to flee † | geflohen | | floh | fliehe |
| fließen, to flow † | geflossen | | es floß | fließe |
| fressen, to de- vour | gefressen | du frisstest | fraß | friß |
| frieren, to freeze | gefroren | | fror | friere |
| gebären, to bring forth | geboren | | gebar | gebär or gebier |
| geben, to give | gegeben | du gibst | gab | gieb |
| gebieten, to order | geboden | | gebod | gebiete |
| gebeihen, to pros- per | gebiehen | | gebieh | gebeihe |
| gefallen, to please | gefallen | like fallen | gefiel | gefalle |
| gehen, to go | gegangen | | gi(e)ng | geh |
| gelingen, to suc- ceed | gelungen | | es gelang or gelung mir | gelingen |
| gelten, to avail | gegolten | du giltst | galt § | gilt |
| genesen, to cure | genesen | | genas | geneſe |
| genießen, to en- joy | genossen | | genos | genieße |
| geschehen, to hap- pen | geschehen | es geschieh(e)t | geschah | geschehe |
| gewinnen, to win | gewonnen | | gewann gewonn | gewinne |
| gießen, to pour | gegossen | | goß | gieße |
| gleichem, to re- semble | geglichen | | glich | gleich |
| graben, to dig | gegraben | du gräbst | grub | grabe |
| greifen, to seize | gegriffen | | griff | greife |
| haben, to have, (No. 113) | | | | |

* Pres. Ind. poetically, du fliegst.

† Pres Ind. poet. du fluchst.

‡ Pres. Ind. poet. du fluchtest.

§ Subj. gölte.

|| Subj. gewönne,

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> | <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Imperative.</i> |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| halten, to hold | gehalten | du hältst | hielt | halte |
| hängen, to hang | gehungen | | hing | hänge |
| hauen, to hew | gehauen | | hieb | haue |
| heben, to lift | gehoben | | hob or hub* | hebe |
| heißen, to be called | geheißen | | hieß | heiße |
| helfen, to help | geholfen | du hilffst | half † | hilf |
| kennen, to know ‡ | gekant | | kante | kenne |
| kleben, to cleave | gekloben | | klob | kliebe |
| keifen, to chide | gekiffen | | kiff | keife |
| klimmen, to climb | geklimmen | | klimm | klimme |
| klingen, to ring | geklingen | | es klang | klinge |
| kneifen or kneipen to pinch | gekneiffen gekneippen | | kneiff or kneipp | kneife or kneipe |
| kommen, to come | gekommen | du kömmtst | kam | komm |
| können, § to know, to be able | gekönnt | ich kann du kannst er kann | konnte | (no im.) |
| kriechen, to creep | gekrochen | | kroch | krieche |
| laden, to load | geladen | du lädst | lud | lade |
| lassen, to let, leave | gelassen | — lässest — läßt — läufft | ließ | lasse |
| laufen, to run | gelaufen | | lief | laufe |
| leiden, to suffer | gelitten | | litt | gelitten |
| leihen, to lend | geliehen | | lieh | leihe |
| lesen, to read | gelesen | du liesest | ich las, du lasest, er las | lies |
| liegen, to lie down | gelegen | | lag | gelegen |
| löschen, to extin- guish | gelöschen gelöscht | | löschte | lösche |
| lügen, to lie (to tell a lie) ¶ | gelogen | | log | lüge |

* Subj. hübe or höbe.

† Subj. hilfse or hölfse.

‡ Kennen is used only for to know by the sight or senses, as:—

ich kenne ihn,

I know him.

§ Können is used for to know by the mind, such as languages, sciences, &c.

|| Pres. Ind. poetically, du kreuchst.

¶ Pres. Ind. poetically, du leugst.

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Past. Part.</i> | <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Imperative.</i> |
|---|--------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| mahlen, * to grind | gemahlen | | | mähle |
| meiden, to avoid | gemieden | | mied | meide |
| messen, to milk | gemolken | | mol | melke or milch |
| messen, to mea- sure | gemessen | du missest, er mißt | maß | miß |
| mögen, to be able to be willing | gemocht | ich mag, du magst, er mag | mochte | |
| müssen, to be ne- cessary, to be forced | gemußt | ich muß du mußt | mußte, | |
| nehmen, to take | genommen | du nimmst | nahm | nimm |
| nennen, to name | genannt | | nannte† | nenne |
| pfeifen, to whis- tle | gepfiffen | | pfiff | pfiefe |
| pflegen, to be wont | gepflogen | | pflog | |
| preisen, to praise | gepriesen | | pries | preise |
| quellen, to stream | gequollen | es quillt | es quoll | |
| rathen, to advise | gerathen | du räthst | rieth | rathe |
| reiben, to rub | gerieben | | rieb | reibe |
| reißen, to tear | gerissen | | riß | reiße |
| reiten, to ride | geritten | | ritt | reite |
| rennen, to run | gerannt | | rannte | renne |
| riechen, to smell | gerochen | | roch | rieche |
| ringen, to wrestle | gerungen | | rang or rning | riuge |
| rinnen, to flow, | geronnen | | es rann† | |
| rufen, to call | gerufen | | rief | rufe |
| saufen, to drink to excess | gesoffen | du säuffst | soff | saufe |
| saugen, to suck | gesogen | | sog | sauge |
| schaffen, to create | geschaffen | | schuf | schafe |
| scheiden, to sepa- rate | geschieden | | schied | scheide |
| scheinen to appear to shine, (Im.) | geschienen | | es schien | |

* Malen, or mahlen, to paint, is regular.

† Subj. regular.

‡ Subj. rönne.

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> | <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Imperative.</i> |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| schelten, to call names | gescholten | du schillst | schalt* | schelte |
| scheren, to shave | geschoren | du schierst | schor | schier |
| schieben, to push | geschoben | | schob | schiebe |
| schießen, to shoot | geschossen | | schuß | schieße |
| schinden, to flay | geschunden | | schund | schinde |
| schlafen, to sleep | geschlafen | du schläfst | schliefe | schlase |
| schlagen, to beat | geschlagen | du schlägst | schlug | schlage |
| schleichen, to sneak | geschlichen | | schlich | schleiche |
| schleifen, to grind+ | geschliffen | | schliff | schleife |
| schließen, to shut | geschlossen | | schloß | schließe |
| schlingen, to swallow | geschlungen | | schlung or schlang | schlinge |
| schmeißen, to throw | geschmissen | | schmiß | schmeiße |
| schmelzen, to melt | geschmolzen | es schmilzt | es schmolz | |
| schneiden, to cut | geschnitten | | schnitt | schneide |
| schreiben, to write | geschrieben | | schrieb | schreibe |
| schreien, to shriek | geschrien | | schrie | schreie |
| schreiten, to walk | geschritten | | schritt | schreite |
| schweigen, to be silent | geschwiegen | | schwieg | schweige |
| schwellen, to swell | geschwollen | du schwillst | schwoll | schwill |
| schwären, to fester | geschworen | | es schwor | |
| schwimmen, to swim | geschwommen | | schwamm† | schwimme |
| schwinden, to vanish | geschwunden | | schwand | schwinde |
| schwingen, to winnow, to swing | geschwungen | | schwang | schwinge |
| schwören, to swear | geschworen | | schwur, or schwor§ | schwöre |
| sehen, to see | gesehen | du siehst | sah | siehe |
| senden, to send | gesandt | | sandte | sende |

* Subj. schölte.

† When this verb is used in the sense of *to demolish*, it is regular.

‡ Subj. schwümme.

§ Subj. schwüre.

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> | <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Imperative.</i> |
|----------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| seyn, to be (No. 114) | | | | |
| sieden, to boil | gekottet | | kott | siede |
| singen, to sing | gesungen | | sang | singe |
| sinken, to sink | gesunken | | sank | sinke |
| sinnen, to think | gesonnen | | sann* | sinne |
| sitzen, to sit | gesessen | | sass | sitze |
| sollen, to be obliged | gesollt | | sollte | |
| spien, to spit | gespien | | spie | speie |
| spinnen, to spin | gesponnen | | spannt | spinne |
| sprechen, to speak | gesprochen | du sprichst | sprach | sprich |
| springen, to jump | gesprungen | | sprang | springe |
| stechen, to prick | gestochen | du stichst | stach | stich |
| stehen, to stand | gestanden | | stand † | steh |
| stehlen, to steal | gestohlen | du stiehst | stahl | stiehl |
| steigen, to ascend | gestiegen | | stieg | steige |
| sterben, to die | gestorben | du stirbst | starb or sturb § | stirb |
| stinken, to stink | gestunken | | stank | |
| stoßen, to push | gestoßen | du stößest | sties | stoße |
| streichen, to rub | gestrichen | | strich | streich |
| streiten, to fight | gestritten | | stritt | streite |
| thun, to do | gethan | ich thue du thust er thut | that | thue |
| tragen, to carry | getragen | du trägst | trug | trage |
| triefen, to drop | getroffen | treufft | troff | trenf |
| treffen, to hit | getroffen | du triffst | traf | triff |
| treiben, to drive | getrieben | | trieb | treibe |
| treten, to tread upon | getreten | du trittst | trat | tritt |
| trügen, to cheat | see betrü- gen | treugst | | |
| trinken, to drink | getrunken | | trank | trinke |
| verbergen, to hide | verborgen | du verbirgst | verbarg | verbirg |
| verbleiben, to re- main | see bleiben | | | |

* Subj. sönne. † Subj. spönne. ‡ Subj. stünbe. § Subj. stürbe.

| <i>Infinitive.</i> | <i>Past. Part.</i> | <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | <i>Imperfect.</i> | <i>Imperative.</i> |
|---------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| verbleichen, to grow pale | see erbleichen | | | |
| verderben, to spoil | verdorben | du verderbst | verdarb* | verdirb |
| verdrießen, to vex (imp.) | verdroffen | eß verdreußt | eß verdroß mich | |
| vergessen, to forget | vergessen | du vergiffest | vergaß | vergiß |
| vergleichen, to compare | see gleichen | | | |
| verlieren, to lose | verloren | | verlor | verliere |
| verschwinden, to vanish | verschwunden | | verschwand | |
| verstehen, to understand | see stehen | | | |
| verwirren, to entangle | verwirren | | verwirr | |
| verzeihen, to pardon | verziehen | | verzieh | verzeihe |
| wachsen, to grow | gewachsen | du wächst | wuchs | wachse |
| waschen, to wash | gewaschen | du wäschest | wusch | wasche |
| weben, to weave | gewoben | | wob | |
| weichen, to yield | gewichen | | wich | weiche |
| weisen, to show | gewiesen | | wies | weise |
| wenden, to turn | gewandt | | wandte | wende |
| werben, to enlist | geworben | du wirbst | warb† | wirb |
| werden, to become | geworden | du wirst | ward, or wurde | |
| werfen, to cast | geworfen | du wirfst | warf† | wirf |
| wiegen, to weigh | gewogen | | wog | wiege |
| winden, to wind | gewunden | | wand, or wund | winde |
| wissen, to know | gewußt | ich weiß du weißt er weiß | wußte | wisse |
| wollen, to be willing | gewollt | ich will, du willst | wollte | |
| zeihen, to accuse | gezielt | zeuchst | zieh | |
| ziehen, to draw | gezogen | " | zog | ziehe |
| zwingen, to force | gezwungen | | zwang | zwinge |

* Subj. verdirbe.

† Subj. wirbe.

‡ Subj. wirfe.

180. LIST OF NEUTER VERBS,**SHEWING THEIR APPROPRIATE AUXILIARY.**

N.B.—The asterisk (*) denotes that the verb may take either *haben* or *seyn*.

The following take *seyn*:—

| | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Abbrennen, to reduce to ashes | heilen, to heal |
| ankommen, to arrive | herumschweifen, to ramble |
| altwerden, to grow old | hüpfen, to hop |
| aufwachen, to wake up | klettern, to climb |
| begegnen, to meet | kommen, to come |
| bersten, to burst | kriechen, to creep |
| bleiben, to remain | laufen, to run |
| brechen,* to break | nachfolgen, to pursue |
| durchbringen, to penetrate | reisen, to travel |
| durchreisen, to travel through | reiten* to ride |
| einbraten,) to reduce by | rennen, to run |
| einkochen,) cooking or | rollen, to roll |
| einsieden,) baking | rücken, to advance |
| einschlafen, to fall asleep | scheiden, to separate |
| eintreffen, to happen | schiffen, to navigate |
| entschlafen, to die | schmelzen, to melt |
| entwischen, to escape | schwellen, to swell |
| erbläßen,) to grow pale | schwimmen,* to swim |
| erbleichen,) | segeln, to sail |
| erfrieren, to die of cold | senken, to sink |
| ermüden, to tire | springen, to jump |
| erröthen, to blush | steigen, to mount |
| erlaufen, to be drowned | sterben, to die |
| erscheinen, to appear | stolpern, to stumble |
| erschrecken, to be frightened | stranden,* to strand |
| erstarren, to benumb | streifen, (herum) to stroll |
| erstaunen, to surprise | stürzen, to fall |
| ersticken, to be choked | traben,* to trot |

| | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ertrinken, to drown | treten,* to tread |
| erwachen, to awake | umkommen, to perish |
| fahren,* to go in a carriage | umschlagen, to upset |
| fallen, to fall | veralten, to grow old |
| flattern,* to flutter | verarmen, to impoverish |
| fliegen, to fly | verbleichen, to grow pale |
| frieren,* to freeze | verbrennen, to burn |
| fließen, to flow | verderben, to spoil |
| gelingen, to prosper | verdorren, to dry up |
| gehen, to go | verfaulen, to rot |
| gelangen, to attain | verwüthen, to become wild |
| gelingen, to succeed | verzagen, to be discouraged |
| genesen, to cure | verzweifeln, to despair |
| genug seyn, to suffice | wachsen, to grow |
| gerinnen, to coagulate | weichen, to yield |
| geschehen, to happen | ziehen, to draw |
| gleitschen, to slide | zuorkommen, to prevent |

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| Es ist abgebrannt, | It is reduced to ashes |
| Ich bin begegnet, | I have met |

181.

Observations.

All the verbs compounded with *gehen* and *laufen* take *seyn*; as:—

| | |
|-----------------------|-----------------|
| Er ist fort gelaufen, | He has run away |
|-----------------------|-----------------|

Fahren takes *haben* in the active sense, and *seyn* in the neuter sense; as:—

| | |
|--|---|
| Er hat die Garben in die Scheuer gefahren, | He has carted the wheat-sheaves to the barn |
| Ich bin nach Darmstadt gefahren, | I went to Darmstadt |

Frieren takes *haben* when speaking of the weather, or of

a person, and *seyu* when we mention what is frozen :—

| | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| Es hat gefroren, | It has frozen |
| es hat mich gefroren, | I have been cold |
| der Fluß ist gefroren, | The river is frozen |
| der Wein ist gefroren, | The wine is frozen |

Reiten, to ride, takes *haben* in the active, and *seyu* in the neutral sense :—

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Er hat einen Schimmel geritten, | He has mounted a white horse |
| er ist nach Hanau geritten, | He rode to Hanau |

Treten and *ziehen* follow the same rule :—

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Auf etwas getreten haben, | To have tread upon something |
| herein getreten seyn, | To have gone in |
| er hat seinen Degen gezogen, | He has drawn his sword |
| er ist gegen den Feind gezogen, | He marched against the enemy |

182. COMPOUND VERBS.

The preposition with which a verb is compounded is sometimes *separable*, in which case the *ge* of the past participle and the *zu* of the gerund are placed between the preposition and the verb; as :—

Abſchreiben, to copy *Abzuſchreiben*, *Abgeſchrieben*,

And in the conjugation of such a verb, the preposition is placed after the verb in all the simple tenses* of the Indicative and the Imperative; as :—

Abſchreiben, to copy.

* Hence it is called separable.

| INDICATIVE. | SUBJUNCTIVE. |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| | <i>Present.</i> |
| Ich schreibe ab, | Daß ich abschreibe* |
| | <i>Imperfect.</i> |
| Ich schrieb ab, | Daß ich abschriebe, |
| | <i>Perfect.</i> |
| Ich habe abgeschrieben, | Daß ich abgeschrieben habe, |
| | <i>Pluperfect.</i> |
| Ich hatte abgeschrieben, | Daß ich abgeschrieben hätte, |
| | <i>Future.</i> |
| Ich werde abschreiben, | Daß ich abschreiben werde. |
| | IMPERATIVE. |
| Schreibe ab, copy thou | Schreiben Sie ab, let them copy |

183.

LIST OF VERBS

COMPOUNDED WITH SEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS

N.B.—These prepositions are also called prefixes.

| | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Abschreiben, to copy | Lossbinden, to untie |
| anfangen, to begin | mitbringen, to bring |
| aufmachen, to open | nachjagen, to pursue |
| ausgehen, to go out | niederlegen, to lay down |
| beifügen, to add | umkehren, to return |
| darbieten, to offer | untersinken, to founder |
| durchbringen, to press on | überfließen, to overflow |
| einschlafen, to fall asleep | vollfüllen, to fill |
| fehltreten, to commit a fault | vorstellen, to represent |
| fortfahren, to continue | wegnehmen, to take away |
| heimgehen, to go home | wieder kommen, to come back |
| hersagen, to recite | zufügen, to add |
| hinrichten, to execute | zurücksenden, to send back |
| innehalten, to stop | |

* In the Subjunctive mood, the preposition is not separated.

184. *Remark.*—When the preposition is separated from the verb, it should be placed after all the words that are governed by the verb;* as:—

Ich fange meine arbeit sehr I begin my work very early
früh an,

Ich gehe sehr oft aus, I often go out

185. The preposition is never separated when the sentence begins with some transpositive word; as:—

Wenn ich meine Briefe abschreibe, When I copy my letters

186. The Prepositions durch, um, unter, über, classed among the separable prepositions, are only *separable*,† when the verb is not accompanied by its regimen, or when hin- durch, herum, hinunter, hinüber, might be substituted. They are on the contrary *inseparable* when the verb is accompanied by a regimen or when the aforesaid words could not be substituted; as:—

| | |
|----------------------------|------------------|
| Durchflechten, to entwine | Ich durchflechte |
| umarmen, to embrace | ich umarme |
| unterbrechen, to interrupt | ich unterbrach |
| überlegen, to reflect | ich überlege |

Voll is separable only when it signifies, full, filled:—

| | |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| vollenden, to finish | ich vollende |
| vollfüllen, to fill | ich fülle es voll |

187. Besides the above prepositions, there are certain verbs used with *nouns, verbs, adverbs, &c.* which follow

* Hence the pupil will frequently find the separable preposition at the end of a very long sentence.

† A rule given by some grammarians to know when these prepositions are separable or inseparable is, that when the tonic accent is on the preposition it is separable, and when on the verb, it is inseparable: as;

durchgehen, to go through. durchgehen, to desert.

the same rules as these prepositions; the following occur most frequently.

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Dank sagen, to return thanks | } ich sage dank ich habe dank gesagt ich werde dank sagen |
| Gefahr laufen, to run the risk | |
| | |

And the following—

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Abrede nehmen, to agree | zu ende bringen, to finish |
| kund machen, to publish | sich schlafen legen, to go to bed |
| an die hand gehen, to suggest | von statten gehen, to succeed |
| stehen bleiben, to stop | sich anheischig machen, to en- gage oneself |
| fahren lassen, to let go | auswendig lernen, to learn by heart |
| in betrachtung ziehen, to consider | |
| im verdacht haben, to suspect | |
| um rath fragen, to consult | |
| um vergebung bitten, to ask pardon | |

188. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.

There are only ten inseparable prepositions; viz. :—

Be, emp, ent, er, ge, hinter,, miß, ver, wider, and zer.—

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| Bedenken, to reflect | Hintergehen, to deceive |
| empfehlen, to recommend | mißhandeln, to ill treat |
| entehren, to dishonour | verabreden, to preconcert |
| erröthen, to blush | widerlegen, to refute |
| gefallen, to please | zerbrechen, to break |

189. The above verbs do not admit the prepositive ge, in the past participle;* as :—

* Verbs compounded with *mit* in some instances take *ge* in the past participle :—

Gemißbilligt disapproved gemißhandelt ill-treated

man died this evening. How much have you expended? I have forgotten it; I gave your brother two dollars.

There is in Africa, a certain people, called Azanaghis, who wear round their head a kind of handkerchief which covers their nose and their mouth. They never uncover their mouth except to eat and drink. He was sleeping when I entered his room. I saw with surprise that my servant had robbed me; they sought him everywhere, but they found him nowhere. We always do our duty when we can. Can he do it? I would have done it if I had not been prevented. What am I to do now? Copy this, and when you have copied it, show it to me. Do not make mistakes in copying it. I read with much pleasure the German letter which you wrote to me; I have shown it to my master, who admired the style of it. I received yesterday the books which I ordered from Frankfort. There are a great number of good German authors; when you are more forward in that language, you will be able to judge of it, and you will agree that it is a very energetic language.

EXPLANATIONS.

Where, wo—hin; home, nach Hause; to the Post-office, auf die Post; at home, zu Hause; to the play, in das Schauspiel; to win, gewinnen; when, als wann; flute players, and violin players, Flöten- und Violinspieler; generally, gewöhnlich; to rise, aufstehen; to weep, weinen; clergyman, Pfarrer; a certain people, ein gewisses Volk; Azanaghis, Azanaghier; round their head, um den Kopf; a kind of, eine art von; to cover, bedecken; to uncover, aufdecken, entblößen; except to, um zu; with surprise, mit erstaunen; can, können; to hinder,

verhindern; am I to, soll ich; to show, zeigen; in copying it, im Abschreiben; the style, die Schreibart; to admire, bewundern; to receive, empfangen; to order, kommen lassen; the number, die Anzahl; author, Schriftsteller; when you are more forward, wann Sie weiter—gekommen sind; able, im Stande, fähig; of it, davon; to judge, urtheilen; to agree, eingestehen; energetic, kraftvoll.

EXERCISE XXV.

A wild boy having been brought from America to France, was asked by his master—Well, do you still like your own country better than mine? Yes, he answered. And why? Because in my country I could eat when I was hungry, and I could sleep when I wished it; but here I can only eat when you eat, and I can only sleep when you sleep.

A town which was very poor, went to a considerable expense in fêtes and illuminations on the occasion of its prince passing through, who appeared surprised at it. A courtier observed that they had only done what they ought. That is true, replied the prince, but they owe for every thing they have done.

A stammerer, on his arrival in a town, inquired of a citizen for the place where he wished to go. This citizen being also a stammerer, answered him as well as he could, but equally in stammering. The stranger, convinced that he did it to insult him, began to call him names. The other did the same, thinking also that he wished to mimic him. A person who happened to pass at that time, inquired the reason of their quarrel, and had a great deal

of trouble to make them understand that they both were stammerers.

A certain man was very fond of wine, but he found two bad qualities in it. If I mix water with it, he said, I spoil it, and if I do not put any in it, it spoils me.

EXPLANATIONS.

A wild boy, ein kleiner Wilder; having been brought, war mitgenommen; from, aus; to, nach; master, Herr; well, wohl; to like better, lieber haben; a town which was very poor, eine sehr arme Stadt; went to, machte; considerable, beträchtlich; expense, der aufwand; on the occasion of — passing through, bei der Durchreise; at it, darüber; observed, sagte; what, daß was; ought, schuldig seyn; every thing, alles; on his arrival, bei seiner Ankunft; to inquire, sich erkundigen; of a citizen, bei einem Bürger; for the place, nach dem Orte; where, wo—hin; being also a stammerer, welcher ebenfalls stotterte; as well as he could, so gut als möglich; equally in stammering, stotterte aber beständig; convinced, in der meinung; to insult, verspotten; to call names, Scheltworte sagen; did the same, erwiederte sie ihm reichlich; to think, to imagine, sich einbilden; to mimic him, um ihm nachzuäffen; the reason of their quarrel, nach ihrem Streite; trouble, mühe; to make to understand, zeigen; to be very fond of wine, sehr gern Wein trinken; quality, die eigenschaft; to mix water with it, Wasser hinein schütten.

EXERCISE XXVI.

A French General, jealous of a brilliant victory which the Prince de Condé had just gained, said to this hero :— what will those that envy you now say? I do not know, answered the prince, I should like to ask you.

Esop was sold to a dealer of slaves, who a little time afterwards undertook a journey to Ephesus to sell those he had. Every one was obliged to carry a load. Esop chose the heaviest, which was a basket of bread; his companions thought that he did it from stupidity, but at dinner-time the basket was begun, and the load became lighter; the same in the evening, and again the next day; at the end of two days he walked with an empty basket, and his companions admired his choice and his good sense.

A young lord in a joke called his servant a fool; the latter replied, nothing is more natural, Sir; you know the proverb—like master like servant.

A man who prided himself upon his economy, heard that one of his neighbours was more so than he; he wished to be convinced of it. My dear friend, said he to him, entering his dwelling, I have heard that nobody is more economical than you, and as I pride myself to be a little so myself, I should like to converse with you upon the different means you put in practice. If that is the motive which brings you to my house, answered the neighbour, be so kind as to sit down, and we will speak about it; at the same time he put out his lamp, saying, we have no need of a light to talk.

EXPLANATIONS.

Jealous of a brilliant victory, neidisch über einen glänzenden Sieg; which had just gained, — den — eben erhalten hat; those that envy, der Neider; glory, der Ruhm; to like, wollen; to ask you, Sie darum fragen; to be sold, verkauft werden; a slave-dealer, ein Sklavenhändler; to undertake, unternehmen; journey, Reise; to, nach; Ephesus, Ephesus; to sell, verkaufen; every one, jeder; to be obliged,

müssen; to carry, tragen; a load, eine Last; heavy, schwer; bread basket, Brodkorb; from stupidity, aus Dummheit; at dinner time, bei Mittagessen; the basket was begun, ging es über den Korb her (or wurde der Korb geöffnet;) light, leicht; the same in the evening, so auch des Abends; and the same the next day, und auf eben die Art den folgenden Tag; at the end, nach Verlauf, &c.; he walked, say he went empty, (to go empty) leer gehen; to admire, bewundern; choice, Wahl; in a joke, scherzend; the latter, dieser; to reply, versetzen; nothing is more natural, das ist ganz natürlich; the proverb, das Sprüchwort; like master like man, wie der Herr so der Diener; to pride oneself on one's economy, sich etwas darauf einbilden sparsam zu seyn, to be convinced of it, sich davon überzeugen; entering his dwelling, indem er in sein Zimmer trat; as, da; to be proud of something, stolz auf etwas seyn; to converse, sich unterhalten; the different means, die verschiedene Mittel; to put in practice, anwenden; the motive, die Veranlassung; be so kind as to sit down, so belieben Sie sich zu setzen; to put out, auslöschen; to have need, brauchen.

GOVERNMENT.

A list of adjectives and verbs governing different cases and prepositions will be given in the Second Part. This deviation from the original plan it is hoped will be found an improvement, as this part being difficult and tedious, often discourages rather than accelerates the progress of the student.

191.

ADVERBS.

Adverbs are undeclinable words. Some adverbs admit of degrees of comparison like adjectives; as:—

Geschwind, quick, geschwinder, quicker, am geschwindesten, quickest.

There are several kinds of adverbs, viz. :—

Adverbs of Time.

| | |
|---|--|
| Wann, als, da, when | von Tag zu Tage, from day to day |
| von zeit zu zeit, from time to time | von einem Tage } from one day |
| jetzt, now, at present | zum andern, } to the other |
| augenblicklich, immediately | über den andern Tag, every other day |
| sogleich, directly | bei Tage, by day |
| unverhofft, unexpectedly | bei hellem Tage, in open day |
| zusehend, at a glance | bei Nacht, by night |
| balb, soon | beständig, continually |
| in Eile, in haste | ewig, eternally |
| zu gelegener Zeit, at leisure, at a convenient time | selten, seldom |
| alle Tage, every day | in kurzem, shortly |
| allezeit, } always | ehedessen, formerly |
| jederzeit, } always | vor diesem, heretofore |
| immer, } always | vor alters, of old |
| vor langen Zeiten, long ago | nach dem Mittagessen, after dinner |
| neulich, lately | des abends, in the evening |
| ins künftige, in future | nach dem Abendessen, after supper |
| von jetzt an, henceforth | um Mitternacht, at midnight |
| alsdann, then | frühe, early |
| hernach, after | zu rechter Zeit, in time |
| gestern, yesterday | schicklich, seasonably |
| gestern Abend, last night | zur Unzeit, } unseasonably |
| vorgestern, the day before yesterday | unschicklich, } unseasonably |
| heut, } to-day | zur bestimmten Zeit, in the nick of time |
| heut zu tage, } to-day | |
| heut über acht Tage, this day week | |

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| zu Mittag, at noon | je eher je lieber, the sooner the better |
| vormittags, before noon | aufs längste, at most |
| nachmittags, in the afternoon | spät, late |
| morgen, to-morrow | unversehens, suddenly |
| übermorgen, the day after to-morrow | jährlich, yearly |
| morgen frühe, to-morrow morning | monatlich, monthly |
| ing | wöchentlich, weekly |
| des Morgens, in the morning | täglich, daily |
| | ohne aufschub, without delay |

Adverbs of Place.

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Wo,* } where, whither | unten, under |
| wohin,† } where, whither | da unten, yonder |
| woher, whence, from whence | hin und her, here and there |
| wie weit, how far | hier und da, to and fro |
| bis hieher, as far as here | siehe hier, } here is, behold |
| bis daher, } thus far | hier ist, } |
| so weit, } thus far | siehe da, } there is |
| von hier, from hence | da ist, } |
| hier durch, this way | da bin ich, there I am |
| da, there | da ist er, there he is |
| anderswo, } elsewhere | da sind wir, there we are |
| anderwärts, } elsewhere | von dieser Seite, on this side |
| anderswoher } besides | von der andern Seite, on the other side |
| überdies, } besides | überall, everywhere |
| nahe, near | zur rechten hand, on the right |
| hier in der nähe, close by | zur linken hand, on the left |
| weit, far | weiter, farther |
| von weitem, } at a distance | ueberdies, besides |
| von ferne, } at a distance | |

* Denotes rest, the latin *ubi*.

† Denotes *movement*, wo is often transposed from *hin*: as:—

Wo gehen Sie hin, Where are you going to.

| | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| sehr weit, very far | zur Seite, on the side |
| darinnen, within | auf Seite, apart |
| von innen, from within | in Sicherheit, in a place of safety |
| aussen, without, outside | ins besondere, in private |
| hinten, behind | ingendwo, somewhere |
| hoch, oben, high, up there | n irgend, nowhere |
| da oben, yonder | bei Tische, at table |

Adverbs of Quantity.

| | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Wie viel, how much | genugsam, } sufficiently |
| viel, } much, many | hinlänglich, } |
| sehr, } | zuviel, too much |
| nicht viel, not much | hausenweis, in a crowd |
| wenig, little, few | überflüssig, abundantly |
| ein klein wenig, ever so little | gänzlich, quite, entirely |
| nach und nach, by degrees | ganz, } quite |
| genug, enough | alles, } |

Adverbs of Quality.

| | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------|
| Gut | } very, well | Schlecht, } badly |
| wohl | | übel, } |
| sehr | | schlimmer, worse |
| gern | | um die Wette, with emulation |
| am schlimmsten, the worst | | immer besser, better and better |
| immer ärger, worse and worse | | freiwillig, voluntarily |
| ziemlich, middling | | mit vorsatz, on purpose |
| so, so, so, so | | unbesonnener Weise, giddily |
| gewöhnlich, generally | | mit Fleis, on purpose |
| sehr, } very | | nach Wunsch, according to one's |
| stark } | | desires |
| sachte, gently | | aus Scherz, in a joke |
| gern, willingly | | zu Land, by land |
| ungern, unwillingly | | zu Wasser, by water |
| mit Widerwillen, reluctantly | | zu Pferde, on horseback |
| wider meinen Willen, in spite | | zu Fusse, on foot |
| of me | | heimlich, secretly |

| | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| aus Verdruss, in spite of | heimlicher Weise, secretly |
| aus Versehen, heedlessly | frei, } openly |
| mit Gewalt, by force | öffentlich, } |
| mit Unrecht, wrongfully | leicht, easily |
| mit Recht, rightfully | gemächlich, conveniently |
| billig, | umsonst, gratis |
| mit gutem Rechte, } justly | |

Adverbs of Comparison.

| | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| Mehr, more | wie, how, as |
| am meisten, mostly | also, thus |
| höchstens, at most | so viel, so much |
| weniger, less | um so viel mehr, so much the more |
| am wenigsten, at least | |
| weder mehr noch weniger, neither more nor less | nur, only |
| auch, also, too | kaum, hardly |
| | gleichfalls, equally |

Adverbs of Order.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Erstens, firstly | in der Ordnung, in order |
| erstlich, in the first place | einer nach dem andern, one after another |
| zweitens, secondly | |
| mit einander, together | nach allem, after all |
| alles zusammen, all together | unter einander, in confusion |
| Schritt vor Schritt, step by step | in Unordnung, in disorder |
| halb, by halves | wiederum, reciprocally |
| von Stadt zu Stadt, from town to town | zur Belohnung, as a reward |
| | theils, partly |
| vor allen Dingen, before all things | |

Adverbs of Number.

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Wie vielmal, how often | so oftmal, so often |
| einmal, once | das erste mal, the first time |
| zweimal, twice | das letzte mal, the last time |
| auf einmal, at once | noch einmal, once more |
| zweimal auf einander, twice running | von neuem, anew |

| | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| warum, why | wie viel, how much |
| wie, how | wie lange ist es, how long is it |
| wann, when | ago |
| seit wann, since when | es ist lange, it is long since |

Adverbs of Affirmation.

| | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------|
| Ja, yes | dennoch, } | } however |
| ich glaube ja, I think so | doch, } | |
| ſicherlich, certainly | jedoch, } | |
| gewiß, } | allemal, every time | } to be sure |
| gewißlich, } | wirklich, really | |
| allem Anſehne nach, according | ja doch, O yes | } to all appearances |
| to all appearances | wahrhaftig, truly | |
| in Wahrheit, indeed | ſo wahr ich ein rechtſchaffener | } without doubt |
| ohne Zweifel, } | Mensch bin, on the faith of | |
| freilich, } | an honest man | |
| allerdings, } | bei meiner Treue, } | } upon my |
| unfehlbar, infallibly | bei meiner Ehre, } | |

Adverbs of Negation.

| | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Nein, no | nicht viel, not much |
| ich ſage nein, I ſay no | nichts, nothing |
| weder — noch, neither — nor | ganz und gar nicht, not at all |
| auch nicht, neither | im Gegentheil, on the contrary |
| ich auch nicht, nor I neither | nicht mehr, no more |
| keinesweges, by no means | gar nicht, } |
| noch nicht, not yet | kein, } |
| nicht ſo bald, not ſo ſoon | weit geſchit, far from |
| nicht gänzlich, not quite | |

Adverbs of Doubt.

| | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Wo nicht, unless, except | ſchwerlich, with difficulty |
| vielleicht, perhaps | |

Observations.

192. Most adverbs are placed after the verb.

Adverbs of *time* and *number* precede the adverb of *negation*; others follow it:—

| | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| ich arbeite heute nicht, | I do not work to-day |
| er schreibt nicht schön, | He does not write well |

193. When the adverb heads the sentence,* the nominative is placed after the verb in German:—

Morgen werde ich nicht kommen, I shall not come to-morrow
 Schon hörte man den Donner, The thunder was already heard
 Fürchterlich zieht das schwarze Gewitter herauf, The black tem-
 pest approaches frightfully.

EXERCISE XXVII.

My niece is a very good girl, she writes well and speaks German fluently; but her brother is a naughty boy, who always writes badly, and speaks German still worse. He is very fond of dainties, but he does not like his books. Sometimes he goes to bed in the middle of the day and says that he is ill, but when dinner is ready he generally recovers. He is to study physic, but he has no ambition for it. He almost always talks about his birds, which he is passionately fond of. His father is extremely sorry.

EXPLANATIONS.

A naughty boy, ein böser Knabe; to like, lieben; sometimes, bisweilen; to go to bed, sich ins Bett legen; in the middle of the day, bei hellem Tage; to say to be ill, sich für krank ausgeben; to recover, wieder hergestellt seyn; to be to, sollen; to study medicine, [die Arzneifunst] studiren; not to have an ambition for, gar keine Lust dazu haben; almost always, fast immer; passionately, leidenschaftlich or heftig; extremely, außerordentlich; sorry, betrübt.

* Which is the case the same as in English, to give more emphasis to the sentence, particularly in poetry and sublime style.

PREPOSITIONS.

194. LIST OF PREPOSITIONS THAT GOVERN THE GENITIVE.

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Statt, anstatt, instead | jenseits, on that side |
| laut, according | vermittelst, by means |
| kraft, } vermöge, } in virtue | ungeachtet, in spite of, notwithstanding |
| wegen, on account | um—willen, for the sake |
| dießseits, on this side | |

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Statt meiner, | Instead of me |
| laut des Briefes, | According to the letter |
| Ungeachtet der schönen Vertheidigung, | Notwithstanding the fine defence |
| Um meines Bruders willen, | For the sake of my brother |

195. *Prepositions that govern the Dative.*

| | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Bei, by, at, near | aus, out |
| nach, after, according | auffer, except |
| zu, at, to, for to | seit, since |
| entgegen, against, over against | mit, with |
| nahe bei, } nächst, } near | nebst, } sammt, } together, with |
| mitten in, in the centre, middle | von—an, from |

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| Bei meinem Vetter, | At my cousin's (house) |
| zu einem gehen, | To go to some one |
| dem Schlosse gegenüber, | Opposite the castle |
| aus dem Hause kommen, | To come out of the house |
| mit dem Feinde, | With the enemy |
| von diesem Augenblicke an, | From this very moment |

196. *Prepositions that govern the Accusative.*

| | |
|----------------|-----------------------------|
| Für, for | ohne, without |
| durch, through | wider, against |
| gegen, towards | um, for, in order to, round |

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| Für den Fürsten, | For the prince |
| durch die Wolken, | Through the clouds |
| er trägt sich schlecht gegen diesen Mann, | He behaves badly towards that man |
| wider seinen Willen, | Against his will |

197. Prepositions which govern the accusative when they denote a change of place; and the dative when the verbs mark a rest:—

| | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| an, in | an, at, close by |
| neben, on the side, next | auf, upon, in |
| vor, before | über, over |
| hinter, behind | unter, under, among |
| zwischen, between | |

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| An das Wasser gehen, | To go to the water |
| an dem Fuße des Berges stehen, | To stand at the foot of the mountain |
| sich auf den Weg machen, | To set out |
| auf dem Weg seyn, | To be on the way |
| über den Zaun springen, | To jump over the hedge |
| über dem Thore steht geschrieben, | There is written over the door |

General Remarks on Prepositions.

198. Some prepositions are contracted with the definite article; as:—

Am Himmel, instead of an dem Himmel
(See No. 15.)

199. Often, in German, a termination is suppressed

when it is common to two or more words, and this suppressed syllable is replaced by a hyphen (-)*; as:—

Der Ein- und Ausgang, instead of der Eingang und der Ausgang

200. Prepositions should be placed before the word they govern; as:—

Wir gingen durch das Gebüsch, We went through the bush
 Except, halben, on account of; zumider, in spite of; entgegen, against; über, hindurch, during; which are placed after the case they govern:—

| | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Seiner Tugend halben, | On account of his virtue |
| dem Vater zumider or entgegen, | In spite of his father |
| den Tag über, | During the day |

201. The following may be placed before or after the noun:—wegen, on account of; unangesehen, without paying respect or regarding; ungeachtet, notwithstanding; gegenüber, over against, as:—

Man verachtet ihn wegen seines Geizes (or seines Geizes wegen) He is despised on account of his avarice

| | | |
|---|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| Gegen über der Kirche, or der Kirche gegenüber, or gegen der Kirche über, | } opposite the church | |
| seines Reichthums ungeachtet or ungeachtet seines Reichthums | | } notwithstanding his riches |

202. Compound words which are in part prepositions and in part adverbs, require that the word they govern should be placed between them; these are:—

| | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| Um—her, round | von—her, from here |
| unter—weg, underneath | vor—hin, before |
| über—weg, over and above | hinter—her, from behind |

* And sometimes two hyphens (r)

von—aus, from the house of um—willen, for the sake
 von—an, from

EXAMPLES.

| | |
|---|---|
| Sie stunden um den Wagen herum, | They stood round the carriage |
| das Wasser läuft unter der Brücke weg | The water is running away from under the bridge |
| die Kugel ging über meinem Kopfe weg, | The bullet was passing over my head |
| von meiner Jugend an, | From or ever since my youth |
| er lief vor mir weg, | He ran away from me |
| ich habe es um Ihres Herrn Bruders willen gethan, | I have done it for the sake of your brother |

Remarks on some Particular Prepositions.

203. In speaking of a Place, auf denotes an open place; and in when the spot is enclosed, or supposed to be so; as:—

| | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Er geht auf den Markt, | He goes to market |
| gehen Sie auf das Land? | Are you going to the country? |
| er geht auf die Jagd, | He is going to a chase |
| Er reitet in den Wald, | He rides into the wood |
| Sie gehen in das Haus, | They are going in the house |

204. Für is used in the following instances:—

1. To denote an advantage or a disadvantage:—

| | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| Bitten Sie für mich, | Pray for me |
| es ist eine Ehre für mich, | It is an honour for me |

2. To denote a remedy:—

Dieses ist gut für das Fieber, This is good for the fever.

3. In the sense of—instead of:—

Ich thue es für meinen Bruder, I do it for my brother

4. To denote the price of a thing:—

Ich habe dieses Buch für einen Thaler gekauft, I have bought that book for a dollar

5. In giving one's opinion of a person :—

Ich halte ihn für einen ehrlichen Mann, I consider him an honest man

6. In the sense of *as to, as for* :—

Für mich, As for me

205. Vor is used :—

1. To denote *time, place, order, or rank* :—

| | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| Vor Christi Geburt, | Before the birth of Christ |
| vor drei Tagen, | Three days ago |
| vor dem Hause, | Before the house |
| er geht vor mir, | He goes before me |

2. To intimate *protection, safety, warning, or fear* :—

| | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| Gott beschützet die Gläubigen vor Gefahr, | God protects the faithful from danger |
| wir sind vor den Feinden sicher, | We are safe from the enemy |
| er fürchtet sich vor den Mäusen, | He is afraid of mice |
| der Feind floh vor uns, | The enemy fled before us |

3. To denote the cause of something that hinders one :—

| | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| Ich weiß vor Freude nicht, wo ich bin, | I do not know where I am from joy |
| vor Hunger sterben, | To die of hunger |

206. Gegen merely expresses *against or towards*; but wider always denotes hostility :—

| | |
|--|---|
| Gegen (or wider) den Feind zu Felde ziehen, | To march against the enemy |
| gegen den Strom schwimmen, | To swim against the current |
| die Liebe eines Vaters gegen (not wider) seine Kinder, | The love of a father towards his children |

207. Bei is used with verbs that denote rest; and zu with those that express motions :—

| | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Er ist bei mir, | He is at my house or with me |
| er wohnet bei der Kirche, | He lives near the church |
| er sitzt bei dem Ofen, | He sits by the stove |
| kommen Sie zu mir, | Come to me |
| Sie ist zu ihm gegangen, | She went to his house |

208. In is used before the names of *Countries* and *Provinces*; and also to denote *time* in the sense of *during*; as:—

| | |
|--------------------------|--------------------|
| Er wohnet in Frankreich, | He lives in France |
| In Friedenszeit, | In time of peace |

Before the name of a town, in or zu may be used:—

| | |
|------------------|----------------|
| Zu, or in Paris, | In or at Paris |
|------------------|----------------|

209. After a verb of motion nach is used before the name of a Country or Town:—

| | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| Ich gehe nach London, | I am going to London |
| wir reisen nach England, | We set out for England |

210. The name of a Sovereign, Prince, or Proprietor, is connected to their kingdom, estate, or property by the preposition von:—

| | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| Der König von Preussen, | The king of Prussia |
| der Graf von Solms, | The count of Solmes. |

EXERCISE XXVIII.

Where does your uncle live? He lives in the middle (centre) of the town, near the church, opposite a coffee house. There is a fountain before his house. But, tell me in what street he lives. In William Street, next door to the Arsenal. I shall be able to find his house now. I will send my servant with you. You are very kind, but I will wait a little while till the storm is over. Where have you been since I had the pleasure of seeing you?

I have spent a few months at Paris, and I have had the honour of seeing two emperors, several kings, and a great many other illustrious princes. When did you arrive here? Three days ago. Did not your cousin arrive with you? No, he departed before me. Where is he at present? He is now in Amsterdam, but he will soon set out for London.

EXPLANATIONS.

To live, wohnen; a fountain, Springbrunnen; William-Street, Wilhelm Straffe; the arsenal, das Zeughaus; now, nun, jetzt; to send, schicken; very kind, sehr höflich; till the storm is over, bis das Gewitter vorüber ist; since, seit dem; to spend, zubringen; illustrious, berühmt; to arrive, ankommen; to depart, abreisen; at present, gegenwärtig; soon, in kurzem.

211.

CONJUNCTIONS.

| | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------|
| Und, and | Dasern nicht, | } unless |
| Auch, so, so, also | Es sey denn daß, | |
| Ja, sogar, even | Ungeachtet, nevertheless | |
| Uebrigens, in short | Ehe als, before that | |
| Mit einem Worte, in a word | Obschon, obwohl, obgleich, although | |
| Deswegen, therefore | Ohne daß, without that | |
| Denn, for, because | Gesetz daß, supposing that | |
| Denn, also, then | Wollte Gott daß, would to God | |
| Nach diesem, after which | that | |
| Derweil, on account that | Gott gebe daß, God grant | |
| Weil, because | Behüte Gott daß, } God forbid | |
| Indem daß, whilst that | Da sey Gott vor, } | |
| Aber, allein, sondern, but | So wie, as to, as | |
| Nichts desto weniger, nevertheless | Wenn, so, if | |

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Indessen, however | Wenn, when |
| Nämlich, namely, that is to say | Dergestalt daß, so that |
| folglich, consequently | Seit dem, since |
| ferner, moreover | Bis daß, until |
| In der That, in effect, indeed | In Falle daß, in case that |
| Oder, or | Aus Furcht daß, for fear |
| Entweder—oder, either—or | Es mag seyn daß, } either that |
| So lange als, as long as | Es sey daß, } |
| So viel als, as much as | Dafern nur, } provided that |
| So bald als, so soon as | Wenn nur, } |
| So oft als, every time that | Mit dem Bedinge daß, on condition |
| Von dem an, as soon as | Bermittelt daß, by means that |
| Nach dem, after that | Ehe als daß, before that |
| Als, da, einmal, da, when | Es sey denn daß, except that |
| Also daß, so that | In erwartung daß, } until |
| Angesehen daß, considering | Bis daß, } |
| Auf daß, damit, in order that | Oben oder nicht, in spite that |

Observations.

212. The conjunctions, *allein*, but; *weil*, because; *je weniger*, the less; *wie gleichwie*, the same as, *sondern*, but on the contrary; *nach dem*, after that; *als ob*, as if; *denn*, for; *jemebr*, the more; *obgleich*, although, are placed at the head of a sentence.

213. All the others, *as*, *aber*, but; *doch*, however; *auch*, too, &c., are sometimes placed in the beginning, and sometimes in the middle of a sentence.

214. The conjunctions, *obgleich*, *obschon*, *obzwar*, *wenn gleich*, *wenn auch*, and *wenn nur*, are separated if the nominative be a personal pronoun, which nominative is placed between them, as:—

Wenn Sie auch Freunde hätten, If even you had friends

Ob ich gleich nicht weiß, Although I do not know
 But this is not generally the case if the nominative be any
 other word :—

Wenn auch der Feind stärker wäre, If even the enemy were
 stronger

215. Some conjunctions require to be followed by
 another conjunction :—

Entweder—oder

Er hat es entweder gethan, oder He has either done it, or will
 wird es noch thun, do it

Nicht allein—sondern auch

Sie ist nicht allein (nicht nur) She is not only handsome,
 schön, sondern auch reich, but rich also

Obgleich—so

Ob er gleich mein Better ist, so Although he is my cousin,
 kömmt er doch nicht zu mir, he does not come to see
 me

Sowohl—als
 als auch

Sie ist sowohl reich, als schön, She is both rich and hand-
 some

Wenn—so

Wann

Wenn er Sie nicht bezahlt, so If he does not pay you, tell
 fagen Sie es mir, it me

Wenn gleich—so

Wenn ich gleich Geld hätte, so If even I had money, I
 gäbe ich ihm doch keins, would not give him any

Weder—noch

Ich kenne weder seinen Vater I know neither his father
 noch seinen Bruder, nor his brother

Nach dem er dieses gesagt hatte,
ging er fort (or so ging er
fort, After having said that, he
went away

Different Significations of so.

219. It is used as a conjunction for *if*:—

So Gott will, God willing (if God will)

To denote the consequent in a compound sentence:—

Wann es Zeit ist, so werde ich
kommen, I shall come when it is time

It is used in the following expressions:—

| | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| So bald als, | As soon as |
| so bald es seyn kann, | As soon as possible |
| so daß, | So that |
| so dann ist zu merken, | Then it must be observed |

It is used as a relative:—

Das Buch so* ich gekauft habe, The book which I bought

This word is also used in other acceptations, which practice alone can teach.

EXERCISE XXIX.

As soon as Mr. D—— meets me, he begins to speak German, to practise himself, and loads me with civilities, so that often I know not what to answer him. His brothers do the same, they are not only rich, but they are generous and kind. They love me sincerely, therefore I love them also, and consequently I will say nothing against them. I would love them still more, if they did not make so many ceremonies, but every one has his faults.

EXPLANATIONS.

To speak German, deutsch zu reden; to practise, sich üben;

* In this sense it is now obsolete.

to load with civilities, mit Höflichkeiten überhäufen; so, so, or bergefallt; what to answer him, was ich ihm antworten soll; to do the same, es eben so machen; generous, großmüthig; kind, gutthätig; sincerely, aufrichtig; therefore, folglich; to say never any thing against them, nie etwas Nachtheiliges von ihnen sagen; if they did not make so many ceremonies, wenn sie nicht so viele Umstände machten; every one, jeder; the fault, der Fehler.

220.

INTERJECTIONS.

| | |
|--|---|
| Äh, ah! | Immerhin, well and good! |
| Äh leider, alas! | es gilt, done, agreed! |
| Lieber Gott, good God! | Halbe Beute, I cry halves! |
| Um Gottes willen, for God's sake! | Weg! macht Platz, make room! |
| Feuer, fire! | Halt! halt ein, halt! |
| Zu hilfe! helfet! help! | Ich möchte toll werden, I shall lose my senses! |
| Halt den Dieb, stop thief! | Au! O Weh, oh how you hurt! |
| Wehe euch, woe to you! | Wohlan, well! |
| Pfui, fie! | Nun, wohlan, ah, well! |
| Pfui! der garstige Mensch, fie upon the villain! | Lustig, frisch, cheer up! |
| Wer da, who's there? | Höre, listen! |
| Vormwärts, go on! | Hoß tausend, zounds! |
| Zurück, back! | In's Gewehr, to arms! |
| Ja so, oh, yes! | Kopf weg, mind your head! |
| Ei seht doch, just see! | Gott sey Dank, thank God! |
| Poffen, nonsense! | Stille, be quiet! |

EXERCISE XXX.

Oh! how unhappy I am! It is all over with me! But, good God! why do you halloo so? Alas! they have robbed me of my gold watch and all my money. Woe

to the rascal! If I catch him, I will kill him without mercy. I am mad! For God's sake be calm, for I have taken your watch and your purse, to teach you to shut your door better when you go out. Is it possible? Is it you who have taken them? Here they are. I found them both on your bed.

EXPLANATIONS.

How unhappy I am, wie bin ich so unglücklich; it is all over with me, es ist um mich geschehen; to halloo, schreien; to rob, stehlen; rascal, Spießbube; to catch, erhaschen; to kill, umbringen; mercy, Barmherzigkeit; to be calm, sich beruhigen; to shut better, besser zu verschließen; to go out, ausgehen; possible, möglich; here they are, da sind sie.

SECOND PART.

SYNTAX,

AND PECULIARITIES OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

221. CONSTRUCTION.

Regular Construction is so called when all the words in a sentence follow each other in their natural order, viz:—

1. *The Nominative.* 2. *The Verb.* 3. *The Case Governed.*

Inverted Construction, or Transposition, is thus called when the contrary of the above happens.

To this last construction the German language is more subject than either the English or French; for, whenever a sentence does not begin with the *subject* or *nominative*, there is always transposition.

Before entering upon the rules for this inverted construction, the following explanations are deemed necessary:—

222. *A Period or Sentence* is called simple, when it is composed of but one proposition; as:—*

God is just

God punishes crimes

* A proposition is a sentence containing the *subject* or *nominative*, the *attribute* or the *quality* or *disposition* ascribed to the *subject*, and the *copula* or *connecting word*, which is the verb *to be*, expressed or understood.

223. * * *. In compound sentences, the first part of a proposition is called the *Antecedent*; and the second part the *Consequent*.

224. *The Regimen* are the words which depend upon the verb.

225. *The Case* of the verb is the case a verb governs.

226. *Oblique Cases* are those that are not the nominative.

Rules for Construction.

227. *Remark.*—The general principle upon which the German construction is based, is to place words in such an order, that the words on which the chief sense depends, are placed after those of an accessory or explanatory meaning.

228. *Place of the Adjective or Participle.**—The adjective, or participle used adjectively, is placed before the substantive it qualifies :—

| | |
|----------------------|---------------|
| Das neue Kleid, | The new coat |
| eine sterbende Frau, | A dying woman |

Except the words *selig†* and *allein* :—

| | |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| Mein Vater selig, | My late father |
| Gott allein ist gut, | God alone is good |

229. When an adjective or a participle is accompanied by the words it governs, those words should immediately precede the adjective or participle :—

* For Rules how to express the present participles, see page 77, note §.

† The sense here is, *mein Vater der nun Selig ist*, my father who is now blessed. You may say also :—*mein Seliger Vater*.

Ein gegen jedermann* höflicher Mensch, A man polite to everybody
 eine ihrem Manne getreue Frau, A woman faithful to her husband

230. *Remark.*—In compound tenses the case governed, with all depending words, must be placed between the auxiliary and the participle :—

Ich habe heute Ihren Bruder gesehen, I have seen your brother to-day

231. *Place of the Verb.*—The infinitive, gerund, and past participle are generally placed at the end of the sentence :—

Wir sollen Gott fürchten, die Vorgesetzten ehren, und den Nächsten wie uns selbst lieben, We must fear God, respect our superiors, and love our neighbour as ourselves

Ich werde Morgen zu Ihnen kommen, I will call upon you to-morrow

232. When two or several infinitives, gerunds, or participles are used in the same proposition, the first in English is placed last in German :—

Immer Spazieren gehen, Always to go and walk
 Alle Tage und zu jeder Stunde spazieren gehen wollen, heisset die Arznei zu einer Gewohnheit machen, To wish to go and walk every day and every hour, is making a custom of a remedy

Dieser Garten ist um tausend Gulden verkauft worden,† This garden was sold for a thousand gilders

* The student will notice that in such sentences, the words governed are placed between the article and the adjective or participle.

† But if the gerund depends on the subject, then it precedes the nominative verb, as :—die Gelegenheit gute Bücher wohlfeil zu kaufen erreignet sich nicht alle Tage, The opportunity to buy good books cheap does not occur every day. These sentences may also begin with es, placing the nominative after the verb. Es erreignet sich nicht alle Tage die Gelegenheit gute Bücher, etc.

2. With *wo*, and all words compounded with *wo*, as :—

Wissen Sie *wo* er gewesen ist, Do you know where he has
been?

Der Degen, womit der Mörder The sword with which the
den Reisenden erstach, murderer pierced the tra-
veller

3. With *daß*, and all words compounded with *daß* :—

Im Falle, daß Niemand zu In case that nobody should
Hause ist, be at home

4. And the following :—

Als.

Als ich in meinem Zimmer war, Being in my chamber

Bis.

Warte bis ich Geld bekomme, Wait till I receive money

Da.

Da wir über die Brücke gingen, As we were crossing the
bridge

Dabei.

Ich habe viele Waaren gekauft, I bought a great many goods
dabei aber wenig zu gewinnen by which, however, little
ist, is to be gained

Seit dem.

Seit dem ich das Fieber habe, Since I have had the fever

Damit.

Damit er seine Schulden be- That he may pay his debts
zahle, zahl,

Doch.

Doch will ich schweigen, Yet I will be silent

Gleichwie.

Gleichwie ein Vater seine Kin- As a father loves his chil-
der liebt, dren

Nach dem.

Nach dem er Geld hatte, After he had money

Ob.

Ich weiß nicht ob er mein Freund I know not whether he is
 oder mein Feind ist, my friend or enemy

Obſchon—obwohl.

Obſchon er ſchreiben kann, Although he can write

So.

So ſchön ſie auch iſt, However handsome ſhe may
 be

So bald.

So bald ich Ihren Brief erhielt, As soon as I received your
 letter

So lange.

So lange er hier bleibt, As long as he ſtays here

So viel.

So viel ich aus ſeinen Reden For as much as I could un-
 verſtanden habe, derſtand by his ſpeech

Während.

Während der Mann auf dem Whilst the man is in the
 Lande iſt, country

In dem.

In dem ich den Brief las, As I was reading the letter

Wann.

Wann der Frühling die Wiefen When Spring decks the
 mit Blumen bedeckt, fields with flowers

Weil.

Weil ich die Schmeichler verab- Because I deſpise flatterers
 ſcheue, ſcheue,

Warum.

Warum er auf einmal ſo viel Why he bought ſo much at
 kaufte, once

Wenn.*

Wenn er nicht mein Bruder If he were not my brother
 wäre,

* And all words compounded with wenn.

Wie.

Wie Sie meinem Vetter gemeldet haben, As you informed my cousin

237. Remarks.—When the conjunction daß is suppressed,* the nominative verb is not transposed:—

Ich wünsche er hätte es nicht gethan, I wish he had not done it

Ich wollte Sie gehen mit mir, I wish you would go with me

Wollte Gott alle große Herren liebten den Frieden, Would to God all great lords loved peace

238. When, at the end of the sentence, there are two infinitives, the verb that is to be transposed should be placed before these two infinitives:—

Ich weiß nicht ob er noch mit uns wird gehen wollen, I know not if he will go with us

Ich habe es ihm gesagt daß Sie das Pferd haben verkaufen müssen, I told him that you were obliged to sell the horse

239. And if the sentence, of which the verb is to be transposed, is followed by another in which there is a gerund, the verb may either precede or follow this last sentence:—

Ich wundere mich nicht, daß Sie wünschen den Frieden hergestellt zu sehen, or Ich wundere mich nicht daß Sie den Frieden, hergestellt zu sehen wünschen, I am not surprised that you should wish to see peace restored.

* Which is often the case after wünschen, wollen, hoffen, fürchten, besorgen, wollte Gott, gefeh.

240. *Place of the Nominative or Subject.*— The nominative is placed after the verb,* whenever the sentence begins with an *adjective* or *adverb*, with a *preposition* and *'ts complement*, with a *participle*, in short with any other word except the nominative:—

| | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| Morgen werden wir da seyn | We shall be there to-morrow |
| Im Anfange schuf Gott Him- | In the beginning God created |
| mel und Erde | Heaven and Earth |

241. The nominative is placed after the verb in exclamations:—

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| Wie glücklich sind Sie! or, | } How happy you are! |
| Wie sind Sie so glücklich, | |

242. Also when the sentence begins with a conclusive conjunction:—

| | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Dem zufolge verordnete er daß, | In consequence of that, he |
| | ordered |

243. Also if the sentence begins with *doch*, *jedoch*, *dennoch*, *gleichwohl*, *nichts desto weniger*, *hingegen*, *im Gegentheil*, as:—

| | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Doch schreibt er, daß, | However he writes, that |
| nichts desto weniger glaubt er, | Nevertheless he believes |
| Im Gegentheil wünscht er, | On the contrary he wishes |

244. *Remark.*—The adverbs of comparison, *wie*, *gleichwie*, *nicht nur*—sondern auch, *je*—mehr, and all others which are preceded by *je*, cause the nominative to be transposed of the *consequent*, but not of the *antecedent*:—
Wie (or gleichwie) das Meer, The same as the sea is dis-
vom Winde bewegt wird, also turbed by the wind, so a

* The nominative comes after the verb as in English, when the verb is used interrogatively; as:—Lernen Ihre Herren Brüder deutsch? Do your brothers learn German?

| | |
|---|--|
| wird ein Mensch von den Leidenschaften bewegt, | man is disturbed by the passions |
| Je mehr ich trinke, je mehr (desto mehr) habe ich durst, | The more I drink, the more thirsty I am |

245. The nominative is placed after the verb in the *consequent* of a compound sentence:—

| | |
|--|---|
| Nach dem wir die Stadt verlas- sen hatten, zog der Feind da- selbst ein, | After we had left the city, the enemy entered it |
| Wenn ich reich wäre, so hätte* ich Freunde, | If I were rich I should have friends |

246. It is placed after the verb when the conjunction *wenn* or *ob* is omitted:—

| | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| Is der Wein gut, so werde ich ihn kaufen, | If the wine is good I will buy it |
|--|--------------------------------------|

247. Also when the sentence begins with *es*:—

| | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Es lehret uns die Erfahrung, | Experience teaches us |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|

248. Also in parenthesis:—

| | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| Sie wollen mich also verlassen, sagte sie, | You wish to abandon me she said |
|---|------------------------------------|

249. Remark.—In propositions where the nominative is transposed, that nominative may be placed before or after the regimens, provided these regimens are personal pronouns, and the subject nominated be a noun; but if the nominative is also a personal pronoun, or if the regi-

* But by turning the sentence so as to place the consequent first, then the nominative comes before the verb:—

| | |
|---|---|
| Ich hätte Freunde wenn ich reich wäre, | I should have friends if I were rich |
|---|---|

mens are substantives, the nominative should precede the regimens :—

Morgen wird mein Vater mit ein Buch geben, or, Morgen wird mir mein Vater ein Buch geben, but we should say:—Morgen wird er es mir geben, (not wird er mit es geben.)

250. *Place of the Regimen.*—In propositions where the verb is transposed, the word or words governed by the verb, are placed before *the infinitive*, the *participle*, and before the nominative verb in a simple tense :—

| | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| Ihm schreiben, | To write to him |
| Das Buch geben, | To give that book |
| Nach dem er mir sagte, | After he said to me |

251. If a verb governs two personal pronouns, the one in the accusative takes the precedence :—

Ich schenke sie Ihnen, I make you a present of them

252. But if both the regimens are nouns, the dative goes first :—

| | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| Man hat meinem Bruder ein | They have made my brother |
| schönes Buch geschenkt, | a present of a handsome |
| | book |

253. And if the verb governs a noun and a pronoun, the pronoun is expressed before the noun :—

Ich kann es meinen Freunden I cannot refuse it to my
nicht abschlagen, friends

254. *Place of the Attribute.*—The attribute relating to the subject is placed at the end of the sentence :—

Ich bin meinen Freunden ge- I am faithful to my friends
treu,

Seyd gegen Jedermann höflich, Be polite to everybody

255. *Place of the Adverbs and Prepositions.*—The

adverbs that relate to the nominative are placed at the end of the sentence :—

Der Kranke befindet sich diesen Morgen viel besser, The patient is much better this morning.

256. Prepositions are generally placed before the word they govern, except when they are compounded with *da*, then they are placed at the end of the sentence :—

Was macht er damit ? What is he doing with it ?
Wollen Sie auch davon, Will you also have some of it ?

257. *Place of nicht.*—The negation *nicht* is placed the same as *not* in English, when it relates to the nominative ; otherwise its place is before the word it modifies ; thus there is a great difference in sentences like the following :—

Man arbeitet nicht den ganzen Tag, Man arbeitet den ganzen Tag nicht,

The first sentence signifies that one works, but not the whole day ; and the second, that one does not work at all.

258. *Nicht* is placed before every other adverb except those of time :—

Er schreibt nicht gut, He does not write well
Er ist nicht da, He is not there
Ich gehe heute nicht aus, I am not going out to-day

259. *Noch nicht* signifies not yet ; *Nicht noch* not more.

Wollen Sie noch nicht etwas essen ? Will you not eat anything yet ?
Wollen Sie nicht noch etwas essen ? Will you not eat something more ?

260. We say *auch nicht* if the sentence is only negative ; but we should say *nicht auch* when it is also interrogative :—

Ich kann es auch nicht thun, I also cannot do it
Sind Sie nicht auch da gewesen? Have you been there also?

Observe. In the foregoing rules I have endeavoured to explain only that part of the German construction which differs from the English; therefore whenever the above explanations do not require the contrary, the sentence is to be constructed as in English.

261. USE OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

This article is used before a noun to denote the whole extent of its species:—

Der Mensch ist sterblich, Man is mortal

The definite article is also used before names preceded by *heilig*; as:—

Der heilige Paulus, Saint Paul

262. Also before proper names which do not admit of a termination; as:—

Der Daphnis* liebte die Philis, Daphne loved Philis

263. Before *Herr*, *Frau*, *Jungfer*, and *Fräulein*, used in the plural but not in the singular:—

Die Herren F— besuchen alle Messieurs F. daily visit the
Tage die Jungfern N. Miss N.

264.

GOVERNMENT.

The latter of two nouns relating to each other must be in the genitive.

* In the nominative it is optional whether to use the article or not in this case.

265. When a noun is used by apposition, it must be put in the same case as the one preceding it:—

Heinrichen dem Vierten, To Henry the Fourth

266. Instead of the English genitive *of*, the preposition *von* or *aus* is sometimes used; viz.:—

Von, before the name of a country

Der Südliche Theil von England, The south of England

To express condition or proportion:—

Eine Frau von Verstande, A sensible woman

Eine Summe von dreißig Thälern, A sum of thirty dollars

Ein Mann von achtzig Jahren alt, A man eighty years of age

To show the material:—

Ein Ring von Gold, A gold ring

267. *Aus* is sometimes used instead of *von*:—

Eine Blume aus unserm Garten, A flower out of our garden

268. *Remark.*—Neither article nor preposition should be used after a word of measure or quantity, followed by a noun expressive of its contents:—

Ein Glas Wein, A glass of wine

Eine Heerde Schaafe, A flock of sheep

269. GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

The following adjectives govern the genitive:—

| | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Bedürftig, needy, indigent | Müde, tired |
| Benöthigt, needful | Quitt, quits, free |
| Beraubt, bereaved | Satt, satiated |
| Bewußt, conscious | Theilhaft, participating |
| Eingedenk, mindful | Ueberdrüssig, tedious, disgusted |
| Fähig, fit, proper | |
| Frei, free | Verdächtig, suspicious |

| | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| Gewiß, certain | Voll, full |
| Gewohnt, accustomed | Würdig, worthy |
| Loß, loose, untied | and their compounds |
| Mächtig, powerful | |

270. The following govern the dative :—

| | |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| Ähnlich, like | Holz, affectionate |
| Angenehm, agreeable | Nöthig, necessary |
| Angemessen, conformable | Nützlich, useful |
| Bange, uneasy | Schuldig, indebted |
| Gehorsam, obedient | Verbunden, obliged |
| Lieb, dear | Verwandt, related |

271. GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

The following verbs require a particular preposition :—

| | |
|--|---|
| Für etwas verbunden seyn, | To be obliged for something |
| Ich bin Ihnen verbunden für die Sorge die Sie für mich gehabt haben, | I am obliged to you for the care which you have taken of me |
| Einem für Etwas danken, | To thank some one for some- thing |
| Ich danke Ihnen für die Mühe die Sie sich für mich gegeben haben, | I thank you for the trouble you have given yourself for me |
| Für einen trauern, | To be in mourning |
| Er trauert für seinen Vater, | He is in mourning for his father |
| Sich vor etwas fürchten, | To fear something |
| Ich fürchte mich nicht vor den Geistern, | I am not afraid of ghosts |
| Vor Kälte zittern, | To shake with cold |
| Vor Scham erröthen, | To blush with shame |
| Vor Verdruß (Liebe) krank seyn, | To be ill with grief, with love |
| Vor Furcht (Hunger) sterben, | To die with fear, with hun- ger |

| | |
|---|--|
| Sich um einen bekümmern, | To be anxious about one |
| Einen um Etwas betrügen, | To cheat one out of some- thing |
| Wegen eines (etwas) in Sor- gen, in Verlegenheit seyn, | To feel anxious for some one or something |
| Sich wegen (nach) einer Sache erkundigen, | To inquire about something |
| Einen wegen etwas bestrafen, | To punish one for something |
| Sich über etwas freuen, | To rejoice at something |
| Sich über einen (etwas) bekla- gen, beschweren, | To complain of some one or something |
| Ueber etwas betrübt seyn, | To be sorry for something |
| Sich über etwas wundern, | To be surprised at something |
| Sich über einen or etwas auf- halten, lustig machen, | To mock some person (or something) |
| Mit einem (or etwas) zufrieden seyn | To be satisfied with one, or with something |
| Mit einem Sohne oder einer Tochter nieder kommen, | To be delivered of a son, or daughter |
| Mit jemandem Mitleiden haben, | To pity some one |
| Mit etwas beehren, | To honour with something |
| An jemanden verliebt seyn, | To be in love with some one |
| Wegen des Preises einig werden, | To agree about the price |
| An etwas zweifeln, | To doubt of something |
| Sich an etwas erinnern, | To remember something |
| Sich an einem rächen | To revenge on some one |
| An einer Krankheit sterben, | To die of an illness |

272. The following list shows the case some verbs govern:—

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Auslachen, (acc.) to laugh at | Sich erwehren, (gen.) to de- fend oneself |
| Bedürfen, (gen.) to need | |
| Begegnen, (dat.) to meet | Entgehen, (dat.) to avoid |
| Beistehen, (dat.) to assist | Fragen, (acc.) to ask |

| | |
|--|---|
| Bemächtigen, (gen.) to seize by force | Sich freuen, (gen.) to rejoice |
| Benutzen, (acc.) to profit | Sich getrösten, (gen.) to flatter oneself, to confide in |
| Befinnen, (gen.) to remember | Glauben, (dat.) to believe |
| Danken, (dat.) to thank | Gleichen, (dat.) to be equal, to remember |
| Dienen, (dat.) to serve | Leuchten, (dat.) to show light |
| Drohen, (dat.) to threaten | to |
| Entbehren, (gen.) to make shift with | Nachahmen, (dat.) to imitate |
| Enthalten, (gen.) to abstain | Sich nähern, (dat.) to approach |
| Sich erbarmen, (gen.) to have pity | Rufen, (dat.) to call |
| Sich erinnern, (gen.) to re- member | Schmeicheln, (dat.) to flatter |
| | Spotten, (gen.) to mock |
| | Warten, (auf with the acc.) to wait for |

LIST OF PREPOSITIONS WHICH FORM SOME USEFUL
COLLOQUIAL EXPRESSIONS.

273.

An.

| | |
|--|---|
| Sich an einem versündigen, | To transgress against some one |
| An eines Schmerzens Theil neh- men, | To participate in one's grief |
| Ich habe, (finde, verliere) an Ihnen (an ihm) einen ge- treuen Freund, | I have (find, lose) a faithful friend in you, in him |
| Gern an einen wollen, | To have a grudge against one |
| Ich habe eine Bitte an Sie, | I have a request to make of you |
| Es war an einem Sonntage, | It was on a Sunday |
| Die Sache wird schon an den Tag kommen, | It will not fail to be disco- vered |
| Es ist an mir zu spielen, or, } Die Reihe ist an mir, } | It is my turn to play |

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| Es liegt nicht an mir, or, | } | It does not depend on me |
| Es hängt nicht von mir ab | | |
| Die Schuld liegt an ihm, | | It is his fault |
| Es ist mir viel an dieser Sache gelegen, | | This business concerns me much |
| Was geht es Sie an? | | What is that to you? |
| So viel an mir liegt, | | As far as I am concerned |
| Alles was man an den Thieren siehet, | | Whatever is beheld in ani- mals |
| Reich an Hausrath seyn, | | To be rich in furniture |
| Am (bei) Leben seyn, | | To be alive |
| An Muth übertreffen,, | | To surpass in courage |
| An dem Ufer, | | On the border of the river |
| An seinem Munde ersparen, | | To spare from one's mouth |
| Am Lohne abziehen, | | To deduct from the wages |
| Er greift die Sache recht an, | | He goes well about the bu- siness |
| Sich eines annehmen, | | To take somebody's part |
| An jemanden seinen Born aus- lassen, | | To revenge one's rage on one |
| Es kömmt ihm sauer an, | | He feels it keenly |
| Sich gut anlassen, | | To give great expectations |
| Sie that alles was sie ihm an den Augen ansehen konnte, | | She anticipated all his de- sires |
| Man siehet es ihm nicht an daß er so schlimm ist (or so böse ist,) | | By his appearance one would not take him to be so bad |
| Diese Sache geht mich an, | | This business concerns me |
| Es läßt sich schlecht dazu an, | } | There is little chance for it |
| Es ist schlechte Hoffnung dazu, | | |

274.

Auf.

| | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Auf der That ertappet werden, | To be caught in the fact |
| Es beruhet jetzt nur auf ihm | Now it only rests with him |
| Auf Reisen seyn, | To be travelling |
| Auf dem Wege | On the way |
| Auf der Straffe | In the street |

| | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| Sich auf den Weg machen (begeben,) | To start |
| Auf diese Art (Weise) | In this manner |
| Auf eine andere Art, | In another manner |
| Auf die verbindlichste Art, | In the most obliging manner |
| Auf Pfänder leihen, | To pawn |
| Ich nehme es auf mich, | I take it upon myself |
| Auf Abschlag bezahlen, | To pay on account |
| Auf einen böse seyn, | To be angry with a person |
| Sich auf etwas verstehen, | To be a judge of a thing |
| Leihen Sie mir einen Thaler, auf vierzehn Tage, | Lend me a dollar for a fortnight |
| Auf der Flucht seyn, | To flee (to be running away) |
| Er ist auf seiner Seite, | He is of his party |
| Man hat nichts auf ihn bringen können, | They could not convict him |
| Auf Ostern, | At Easter |
| Auf Befehl, | By order |
| Sich auf Gnade und Ungnade ergeben, | To surrender at discretion |
| Wie heißt das auf deutsch, | What is that called in German |
| Auf beiden Seiten, | Through and through |
| Auf ewig, | For ever |
| Sich auf jemanden berufen, | To appeal to some one. |

275.**Aus.**

| | |
|--|---|
| Aus dem Deutschen ins Französische übersetzen, | To translate from German into French |
| Aus Furcht vor der Strafe, | For fear of punishment |
| Ich kann ihm das nicht aus dem Kopfe bringen, | I cannot get that out of his head |
| Er kann aus Erfahrung sprechen, | He can speak from experience |
| Die Predigt (Kirche, Schule) ist aus, | The sermon (church, school) is over or finished |

| | |
|--|---|
| Das Licht ist aus, | The candle is out |
| Ausgeschlafen haben, | To have slept one's fill |
| Etwas aus dem Grunde ver- stehen, | To be thoroughly acquainted with |
| Es wird nie etwas aus ihm wer- den, | He will never be anything |
| Aus den Augen, aus dem Sinne, | Out of sight out of mind |
| Es ist aus mit ihm, | It is all over with him |
| Die Zeit ist aus, | The time is up |
| Bleiben Sie nicht lange aus, | Do not stay out long |
| Ich weiß weder ein noch aus, | I am quite put out, or, I |
| Ich weiß nicht wo mir der Kopf steht, | know not where to begin first |
| Aus eigenem Antrieb, | } From his own head |
| Von freien Stücken, | |
| Die Aufrichtigkeit sieht ihm aus den Augen, | Candour is depicted on his countenance |
| Er sieht vornehm aus, | He looks like a gentleman |
| Er sieht gut aus, | He looks well |
| Wie ein Spizbub aussehen, | To look like a sharper |
| Es sieht schlecht mit ihm aus, | He is badly off |
| Verwirrt aussehen, | To look bewildered |
| Es sieht aus, als ob es regnen wollte, | It looks like rain |
| Es sieht artig aus, | It is pretty to see |
| Es sieht nicht gut aus, | It does not look well |
| Es ist Alles aus, | All is over |

276.

Bei.

| | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| Bei seiner Abreise, | At his departure |
| Sich bei etwas aufhalten, | To amuse oneself with some- thing |
| Bei der Gesellschaft seyn, | } To be of the party |
| In der Gesellschaft gehören, | |
| Sich bei jedermann beliebt zu machen wissen, | To be very prepossessing |

| | |
|--|---|
| Sich bei einem nach etwas erkun- digen, | To inquire of somebody for something |
| Bei einem schlafen, | To sleep with some one |
| Ich halte Sie beim Wort, | I take you at your word |
| Bei sich selbst sagen, | To say within oneself |
| Einen bei guter Gesundheit an- treffen, | To find one in good health |
| Bei allen Gelegenheiten, | On all occasions |
| Er hat es sehr gut bei seinem Herrn, | He is very comfortable with his master |
| Einen bei seinem Nahmen rufen, | To call one by his name |
| Einen bei seiner schwachen Seite angreifen, | To take one on his weak side |
| Bei Licht arbeiten, | To work by candle light |
| Schlecht bei etwas bestehen, | To get badly out of a diffi- culty |
| Bei der Wahrheit bleiben, | To keep to the truth |
| Bei sich haben, | To have about one |
| Bei hellem Tage, | In broad daylight |
| Bei erster Gelegenheit, | The first opportunity |
| Bei Lebzeiten des Königs, | During the king's lifetime |
| Bei seiner Ehre schwören, | To swear by one's honour |
| Bei meiner Treue, | Upon my faith |
| Bei dem Regimente, | In the regiment |
| Bei Hunderten und bei Tausen- den, | By hundreds and by thou- sands |
| Bei Lebensstrafe, | Under penalty of death |

277.**In.**

| | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| In einen heftigen Born gera- then, | To put oneself in a great passion |
| In Verzweiflung seyn, | To despair |
| In sein Verderben rennen, | To run to one's perdition |
| Sich in den Finger (in die Hand) schneiden, | To cut one's finger (or hand) |
| Im Bette liegen, | To be in bed |

| | |
|---|---|
| In dem Augenblicke, | At the moment |
| In die Heirath willigen, | To consent to the marriage |
| Diese Farbe fällt in die Augen, | This colour dazzles the eyes |
| Diese Farbe fällt ins Braune, | This colour inclines to brown |
| Sich in einen Handel mischen, } Sich um eine Sache bekümmern } | To interfere with some business |
| Bekümmern Sie sich um Sie, | Interfere with your own concerns |
| In's Ohr sagen, | To whisper to a person |
| Sich in fremde Händel mischen, | To interfere with other people's business or concerns |
| Sich in ein Frauenzimmer verlieben, | To become enamoured with a female |
| In's Gesicht sagen, | To tell to one's face |
| Sie haben mir in langer zeit nicht geschrieben, | You have not written to me for a long time |
| Bei einem in Gnade stehen, | To be in favour with a person |
| In Ungnade fallen, | To be disgraced |
| Im Begriff seyn, | To be upon the point |
| Zwei Mal im Jahre, | Twice a year |
| Im Jahr 1821, | In the year 1821 |
| Im 18sten Jahr seines Alters, | In his 18th year |

278.**Mit.**

| | |
|--|--|
| Mit seinem eigenen Schaden lernen, | To learn to one's own cost |
| Sich mit etwas gros machen, mit etwas gros thun, | To be proud or to make a parade of a thing |
| Mit lebensgefahrl, | At the peril of one's life |
| Mit genauer Noth, | With great difficulty |
| Mit baarem Gelde bezahlen, | To pay ready money |
| Ein Halstuch mit Spitzen, | A cravat with lace |
| Mit vollen Segeln, | Full sail |
| Mit Füßen treten, | To tread under foot |
| Mit Schaden verkaufen, | To sell at a loss |

| | |
|---|--|
| Es mit einander halten, | To act in concert together |
| Ich kann mich nicht mit ihm ver- tragen, | I cannot bear him, or, I can- not put up with him |
| Mit dem Degen in der Hand angreifen, | To attack sword in hand |
| Seine Stärke kommt mit seiner Tapferkeit überein, | } His courage equals his strength |
| Seine Stärke entspricht seiner Tapferkeit, | |
| Er ist mit seinem Bruder nicht zu vergleichen, | He is not to be compared to his brother |
| Auf einen mit dem Finger weisen, | To point at some one |
| Man muß allezeit mit etwas beschäftiget seyn, (sich etwas zu thun machen) | One should always have something to occupy one- self |
| Er ist mit vielen Sachen be- schäftiget, | He is concerned in a great many things |
| Mit weinenden (thranenden) Augen, | With eyes full of tears |
| Mit schönen Leuten umgehen, | To frequent the fashionables |
| Sich mit einer Person verheira- then (vermahlen,) | To be married to a person |
| Mit einem zanken, | To quarrel |
| Mit einem Worte, | In a word |
| Mit goldenen Buchstaben, | In letters of gold |
| Mit gutem Gewissen, | Conscientiously |
| Mit Geduld ertragen, | To bear with patience |
| Mit etwas handeln, | To deal in something |
| Mit jemandem sagen lassen, | To send word by some one |
| Mit Stillschweigen übergehen, | To pass in silence |
| Es ist mit diesem wie mit jenem beschaffen, | It is with the one as with the other |
| Die Zeit mit Spielen vertreiben, | To pass one's time in playing |
| 279. | Nach. |
| Nach Hause gehen, | To go home |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Nach Hause schreiben, | To write home |
| es gehet ihm alles nach Wunsch, | He is very successful |
| Nach Ehren trachten, | To covet honours |
| Das Verlangen nach Ehre, | The desire of honour |
| Im Jahr, nach Erschaffung der | In the year of the world, of |
| Welt, nach Erbauung der | the building of Rome |
| Stadt Rom, | |
| Sich nach etwas erkundigen, | To make inquiries |
| Der Weg nach Paris, | The road to Paris |
| Die Reise nach Frankreich, | The journey to France |
| Nach Knoblauch riechen, | To smell of garlic |
| Wornach riechet (schmecket) diese | What does this butter smell |
| Butter, | (taste) of ? |
| Sich nach einem ansehen, | To look at one by turning |
| | round |
| Bei seiner Abreise nach Indien, | At his departure for India |
| Da ist ein Päckchen nach Stras- | There is a parcel for Stras- |
| burg, | burg |
| Nach meiner Meinung, | According to my opinion |
| Nachdem es fällt, | According to circumstances |
| Sich nach der Mode kleiden, | To dress in the fashion |
| Nach seiner Bequemlichkeit, | At his ease |
| Nach seinem Gutdünken, | At his option |
| Nach dem Takte tanzen, | To dance in time |
| Von den Leuten nach dem Anse- | To judge people by their |
| hen urtheilen, | looks |
| Nach der Strenge, | Rigorously |
| Nach alphabetischer Ordnung, | Alphabetically |
| Sich nach einem richten, | To follow other people's |
| | manner of acting |
| Das macht nach unserer Münze | That makes in our money a |
| (Gelde) hundert Thaler, | hundred dollars |
| Nach dem Leben malen, | To paint from nature |
| Die Fenster meines Zimmers | The windows of my room |
| gehen nach dem Garten, | look on the garden |

280.

Ueber.

| | |
|---|---|
| Ueber seine Befoldung, Bergnügt seyn geht über Reich- thum, | Beyond his pay Contentment surpasses rich- es |
| Einen über die Achsel ansehen, Ueber die Summe von zehn Thaler. | To look at a person sideways Besides the sum of ten dol- lars |
| Ueber Strasburg nach Paris reisen, | To go to Paris by way of Strasburg |
| Den Tag über, | During the day |
| Die ganze Nacht über, | The whole night |
| Ueber den Fluß fahren, | To cross the river |
| Einen über etwas um Rath fragen, | To ask some one his advice |
| Ueber eine Sache streiten, Die Gewalt die Sie über mich haben, | To dispute about something The power you have over me |

281.

Um.

| | |
|--|---|
| Um die Hälfte vermehren, Er hat sich wohl um ihn ver- dient gemacht, | To increase by half He has well deserved of him |
| Um wie viel Uhr? | At what o'clock? |
| Um sechs Uhr, | At six o'clock |
| Um Mitternacht, | At midnight |
| Eins um's andere Einer um den andern, | } By turns |
| Um einen billigen Preis, Einem um den Hals fallen, | At a reasonable price To cast oneself on the neck of one |
| Um den Vorzug streiten, | To dispute about the pre- eminence |
| Um einen Dienst anhalten, Um Rache schreien, Um etwas wetten, | To seek to obtain a situation To cry for vengeance To bet something |

| | |
|--|--|
| Wie steht's um Ihre Sache, | How do your affairs go on |
| Um die Stadt gehen, | To walk round the town |
| Ich bitte Sie um unserer alten Freundschaft willen, | I request it for the sake of our old friendship |
| Um dies zu bekommen, | For to obtain this |
| Ich möchte es um Alles in der Welt nicht thun, | I would not do it for any- thing in the world |
| Wie gehen Sie damit um ! | } How you are going on ! |
| Wie verfahren Sie damit ! | |
| Wenn es um und um kommt, | When last comes to last |
| Ich bitte Sie um Gott's willen, | I pray you for God's sake |
| Um eine Jungfer freien, | To court a young lady |
| Wie würde es um uns stehen ? | What would become of us ? |

282.

Unter.

| | |
|--|--|
| Unter dem Schatten der Bäume, | In the shade of the trees |
| Unter freiem Himmel schlafen, | To sleep in the open air |
| Unter Lösung der Stücke, | By the report or firing of cannon |
| Unter dem Läuten der Glocken, | By the ringing of the bells |
| Unter der Zahl der Todten, | Among the number of the dead |
| Sie werden es nicht unter dreißig Gulden bekommen, | You shall not have it under 30 florins |
| Was für ein Unterschied ist doch unter den Menschen ! | What a difference there is among human beings |
| Einer unter euch, | One among you |
| Gott ist mitten unter uns, | God is amidst us |
| Unter Wegs, | On the way |
| Unter dem Ofen, Tische, &c., | Under the stove, the table, &c. |
| Unter den Thieren, | Among animals |
| Unter der Predigt, | During the sermon |

283.

Von.

| | |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| Von einem kommen, | To come from a person's house |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|

| | |
|---|--|
| Von meiner Jugend an, | From my youth |
| Von diesem Abend an, | From this very evening |
| Das wird von meinem Bruder gesehen, | That shall be done by my brother |
| Briefe von eben dem Inhalte, | Letters on the same subject |
| Von dem Nutzen einer Sache reden, | To expatiate on the utility of a thing |
| Ich bin von ungefähr dahinter gekommen, | I found it out by mere chance |
| 284. | Vor, Für. |
| Sich vor einem verbergen, | To conceal oneself from some one |
| Etwas vor einem verbergen, or, verstecken, | To conceal something from some one |
| Vor Anker liegen, | To lie at anchor |
| Stück vor Stück, | Piecemeal |
| Ich habe es vor zwei Stunden, vor drei Tagen gethan, | I have done it two days, three years ago |
| Er hat mir etwas vorgeschwätzt, | Has told me falsehoods |
| Die Heirath ist nicht vor sich ge- gangen, es ist nichts daraus geworden, | The wedding did not take place, nothing has hap- pened |
| Jemanden vor sich lassen, | To give an audience to one |
| Vor Gericht erscheinen, | To appear before a court of justice |
| Vor Gericht belangen (fordern,) | To summon |
| Den Vorzug vor einen haben, | To have the preference |
| Vor Hitze nicht bleiben können, | Not to be able to bear the heat |
| Sich vor einem hüten, | To be on one's guard against one |
| Sich vor einem fürchten, | To fear some one |
| Für gut befinden, | To judge proper |
| Ich bitte Sie mich für Ihren Diener zu halten, | I beg you to look upon me as your most obedient |
| Einen für unschuldig erklären, | To acquit a person |

| | |
|---|--|
| Einen Thaler für die Person, | A dollar each |
| 285. | Zu. |
| Das Maas zu einem Kleide nehmen, | To measure for a coat |
| Zu einer Hochzeit gebeten werden, | To be invited to a wedding |
| Einen zum Könige krönen, | To crown one king |
| Zum Nachfolger erkläret werden, | To be declared successor |
| Sich zur Armee verfügen, | To join the army |
| Ihre Grausamkeit macht sie zu unsern Feinden, | Their cruelty makes them our enemies |
| Bertrauen zu jemanden haben, | To put one's trust in somebody |
| Zu gleicher Zeit, | At the same time |
| Zum Glück, zum Unglück, | Luckily, unluckily |
| Zu Land, zu Wasser, | By land, by water |
| Zum Beispiel, | Per example |
| Ich habe ihm zu seiner Beförderung Glück gewünscht, | I congratulated him upon his promotion |
| Seinen Freunden zu ihrem Namenstage Glück wünschen, | To wish a friend many happy returns |
| Die Liebe zum Ruhme, | The love of glory |
| Zu leben haben, | To have wherewithal to live |

 REMARKS

On some rules to be observed in German etiquette, particularly in epistolary correspondence.

Junger, or Mademoisell, is used when we address a young lady who is not of any rank; and Fräulein, to a young lady who moves in the higher circles.

The French words, Monsieur, Madame, Mademoiselle, are also used in German, with this difference, that Monsieur is considered less polite than Mein Herr, and Madame or Mademoiselle more polite than Meine Frau, or Meine Jungfer.

It is more polite to add the title and quality of the person whom we address, than merely using *Mein Herr, Meine Frau, &c.*, as :—

(*Mein*) Herr Baron, Herr Rath, (*Meine*) Frau Rätthin. If the person has no title, then his name is added :—

Herr Wolf, Mr. Wolf* Frau Wolf, Mrs. Wolf

In epistolary style, the Germans use certain epithets by which they denote the dignity of the person to whom they write, as well as their respect or affection for the person who writes. These are in the first place adjectives which signify *the excellence, the power, the clemency, the birth, the merit, &c.*, as :—

| | |
|---------------------------|-----------------|
| Durchlächtig, Most Serene | Mächtig, mighty |
| Gnädig, gracious | Geboren, born |

To which are joined, by way of modification according to the difference of quality, one of these adverbs :—

Aller, hoch, höchst, wohl, edel, viel, insonders, besonders, freundlich, herzlich, &c., so that by the combination of these adjectives and adverbs, by putting them sometimes in the positive, and sometimes in the superlative degree, the following epithets are formed, which are ranked in each class according to the degree of politeness we wish to observe :—

| | |
|--|---------------|
| Durchlächtig, | } Very serene |
| Durchlächtigst, | |
| Allerdurchlächtigst, | |
| Grosmächtigst, allergrosmächtigst, Most mighty | |

* In speaking to a stranger whose name we do not know, we of course cannot add the name, but then *Mein* ought always to be used ; as :—*Mein Herr.*

Unübertwindlichst, very invincibly

Gnädig, gnädigst, allergnädigst, Gracious, most gracious

Edelgeboren, Wohllebelgeboren, hochwohllebelgeboren, hochedelge-
boren, wohlgeboren, hochwohlgeboren, these refer to the birth
of the person, being compounded of geboren, born.

Ebeler, wohllebeler, hochwohllebeler, hochebeler, noble, very noble.

Würdig, ehrwürdig, wohllehrwürdig, hochwohllehrwürdig, hoch-
ehrwürdig, hochwürdig, hochwürdigst, reverend, very reverend.

Hochgebietend, höchstgebietend, &c. These words composed
with the part. pres. of gebieten, to command, denote sub-
ordination.

Gelehrt, wohlgelehrt, hochwohlgelehrt, hochgelehrt, learned,
very learned.

Geehrt, insondersgeehrt, hochgeehrtest, hochzuehrend, honour-
ed, very honoured.

Geneigt, hochgeneigt, favourable.

Geliebt, vielgeliebt, herzlichgeliebt, beloved, dearly beloved.

Werth, sehr werth, werthest, hochwerthest, dear, very dear.

Geschätzt, werthgeschätzt, hoch=und werthgeschätzt, hochgeschätzt,
esteemed, very esteemed.

Many other qualifications are observed in writing, ac-
cording to the difference there exists between the persons
who address each other, as for instance gnädig, which is
only used to a titled person by those who are not so them-
selves. A superior who writes to his inferior, would add
the positive edel, wohl, whereas another would put edelge-
boren, or, hoch.

The following are the titles of honour used instead of the
personal pronouns :—

Eure Majestät,

Your Majesty

| | |
|---|-------------------------|
| Eure Kaiserliche Majestät, | Your Imperial Majesty |
| Eure Königliche Majestät, | Your Royal Majesty |
| Eure Hoheit, | Your Highness |
| Eure königliche Hoheit, | Your Royal Highness |
| Eure Durchlaucht, | Your Highness |
| Eure Kurfürstliche Durchlaucht, | Your Electoral Highness |
| Eure Excellenz, | Your Excellency |
| Eure Gnaden, (to Noblemen) | Your Grace |
| Eure Freiherrliche Gnaden, (to Barons) | Your Grace |
| Eure Hochgräfliche Gnaden, (to Counts) | Your Grace |
| Eure Heiligkeit, | Your Holiness |
| Eure Eminenz, | Your Eminence |

N.B. In Conversation Ihre instead of Eure, is generally used.

A person of high nobility is addressed with:—

Gnädigster Herr, (Most gracious Lord,) My Lord
Gnädigste Frau, (Most gracious Lady,) My Lady

A lady of high rank:—

Gnädige Frau, (gracious lady) Madam
Gnädiges Fräulein, (gracious Miss) Miss

In speaking of the person we say:—

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| Seine Majestät der Kaiser, | } | His Imperial Majesty |
| Seine Kaiserliche Majestät, | | |
| Seine Majestät der König, | } | His Royal Majesty |
| Seine Königliche Majestät, | | |
| Seine Durchlaucht der Herr Herzog, | } | His most serene Highness My Lord Duke |
| Seine Herzogliche Durchlaucht | | |
| Seine Excellenz der Herr Ge- sandte, | | His excellency the Amba- sador |

If we speak of a lady *Ihre* is used instead of *Seine*, as :—
Ihre Majestät die Kaiserin, Her Majesty the Empress
 The usual concluding terms *very humble, yours truly, &c.*,
 are expressed by :—

Gehorsam, gehorsamst, ganz gehorsamst, treugehorsamst, very
 humble.

Untertänig, untertänigst, alleruntertänigst, very humble,
 most humble.

Ergeben, ergebenst, ganz ergebenst, yours truly.

PROMISCUOUS & RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES

AND AN

AMUSING AND INTERESTING INTRODUCTION TO READING
 AND TRANSLATING GERMAN.*

N.B.—*It is particularly requested that the student should read attentively the rules for construction before he attempts these exercises.*

1.

This fine weather has given my sister and me a wish to take a drive this afternoon, and to request the honour of your agreeable company. We trust that you will not refuse us this pleasure, and that you will allow us to call for you at two o'clock.

EXPLANATIONS.

Has—given a wish, *hat*—auf den Gedanken gebracht; to take a drive, *spazieren fahren*; to request, *zu bitten*; the

* It is the intention of the author shortly to publish a German Reader, on the plan of his French and Italian.

agreeable company, die angenehme Gesellschaft; to trust, schmeicheln; to refuse, versagen; but, sondern; you will allow us, daß Sie uns erlauben werden; to call (for a person) abholen; at, (before time or hour,) um.

2.

I accept your kind offer with great pleasure, and I am infinitely obliged to you for the honour you do me. You will find me ready at two o'clock, if you will be so kind as to call for me. I shall then have the honour to express to you personally what time does not allow me now.

Yours, &c.

EXPLANATIONS.

I accept with great pleasure, mit vielem Vergnügen nehme ich an; kind offer, daß gütige Anerbieten; to find ready, bereit finden; to be so kind, so gütig seyn; then, alsdann; to express to you personally, Ihnen mündlich zu sagen.

3.

Will you be so kind as to return by bearer, the French reading book which I lent you about six months ago? It belongs to a friend of mine, who has already asked me for it more than a hundred times. If the book were mine, I should be happy to make you a present of it.

EXPLANATIONS.

To be so kind as, die güte haben; as to return by the bearer, mir durch den Ueberbringer dieses zurückzuschicken; reading book, Lesebuch; about six months ago, vor ungefähr einem halben Jahre; to belong, gehören; to ask for, fordern; I would, so würde ich; be very happy, mit vielem Vergnügen; to make a present, ein Geschenk machen; of it, damit.

4.

You promised me yesterday that you would call upon

me to-day at two o'clock, but you have not done it. You must know that I am very angry with you; for I waited for you with impatience, to tell you something of the greatest importance. Come soon and acquaint me with the reason of your absence: perhaps I may pardon you.

EXPLANATIONS.

To promise, versprechen; to call upon me, mich zu besuchen; to be very angry with a person, auf jemanden recht böse seyn; to wait for, erwarten; things of very great importance, Sachen von der größten Wichtigkeit; to pardon (to excuse,) entschuldigen.

5.

Herewith I return you, with many thanks, your English Robinson, which you were so kind as to lend me, I have had much pleasure in reading it, and it has amused me so much, that I should like to read the other volumes: would you allow me to ask you for them? It is true (that) my liberty is great, but your kindness is still greater, and to that I have recourse.

EXPLANATIONS.

Herewith I send, (or return you,) ich überschicke Ihnen hierbei; with many thanks, mit vielem Dank; amused me so much, mir so gefallen; that I should like to read, daß ich auch gern—lesen möchte; the other volumes, die folgenden Theile; would you allow me to ask for them, dürfte ich wohl darum bitten; still, noch; to that I have recourse, zu ihr nehme ich meine Zuflucht.

6.

Dear Friend—I have the honour to send you herewith a box of grapes. If they are to your taste, there are some

more at your service. Pardon my having so long delayed writing to you ; the vintage has been the cause of it. For the future I will endeavour to compensate for what I have so long neglected, and tell you oftener that I am sincerely,

Rudesheim,

Yours truly,

October, 30th, 1833.

EXPLANATIONS.

A box of grapes, eine Schachtel Trauben ; if they are to your taste, wenn sie Ihnen schmecken ; there are others at your service, so stehen noch mehrere zu Diensten ; pardon, verzeihen ; my having, and say—that I have not written to you, has been the cause of it, hat mich daran verhindert ; I will endeavour to compensate, werde ich einzubringen suchen ; to neglect, versäumen ; sincerely, aufrichtig.

7.

F.

Dear Friend—I have just received the box of grapes which you were so kind as to send me, and for which I heartily return my thanks. I have partaken of them with a few friends, conversing about you in the most advantageous terms. One of the party observed, your friend must be an excellent man, to have such good grapes.

EXPLANATIONS.

Which you were so kind, die Sie so gütig waren ; heartily to return thanks, for it, von ganzem Herzen dafür danken ; conversing about a person in the most advantageous terms, sich von jemanden sehr vortheilhaft unterhalten ; to have such, &c. say, because he has.

8.

—— I have just received your letter, and I am sorry to see that you are so unwell. Allow me to tell you frankly

my opinion, which I hope you will take in good part. Your manner of living is very wrong. You have always drunk too much wine and no water. I have often told you how injurious that was for your health, but you would never pay any attention to it. Your physician will now tell you the same, and him you will be obliged to obey, if you wish to be restored to health. In the mean time bear your sufferings with patience, and observe strictly what your doctor prescribes, and you will soon be well again. This is the wish of

Your ———

EXPLANATIONS.

To receive, erhalten; your letter, Ihr schreiben; allow me to tell you frankly, ich muß Ihnen offenherzig sagen; to take in good part, nicht übel nehmen; manner of living, Lebensart; is very wrong, taugt nichts; injurious, nachtheilig; to pay attention to a thing, auf etwas achten; you will be obliged to obey, werden Sie wohl gehorchen müssen; to suffer, (to bear,) ertragen; observe strictly, befolgen Sie genau; to prescribe, verordnen; to be soon well again, in Kurzem hergestellt seyn.

9.

——— If you loved me as I love you, you would form an idea of my joy when I received your kind letter; and this joy would have been still greater if you had complained a little of my long silence: this would have flattered my self love, for I much desire that my letters may not be considered by you with indifference. However, if they were so, you would not have wished for my profile, which I send you here enclosed. Be so kind as to remember, as often as you deign to look at it, that its original will ever be,

Yours sincerely.

EXPLANATIONS.

You would form an idea of my joy, so würden Sie sich einen Begriff von der Freude machen können die ich empfand; when, da; kind letter, angenehmes Schreiben; silence, Stillschweigen; I much desire, ich wünschte sehr; are not considered by you with indifference, daß Ihnen—nicht gleichgültig wären; however, jedoch; profile, der Schattenriß; to wish for, begehren; I send here enclosed, ich—hierbei übersandte; to deign, würdigen; to look at, ansehen; yours sincerely, ganz der Ihrige.

10.

—— I have read several times your charming German letter, and I am surprised how you have been able to learn this language in so short a time. You request me to correct the mistakes I may find in your letter. As you wish it, I will speak frankly; you have committed two very great errors in it; the first is, that your letters are always too short, and the second, that you request me to correct them. Be so kind, for the future, as to avoid these two faults, and you will oblige, Your, &c.

EXPLANATIONS.

I have, &c., say—with much pleasure, &c., several times, verschiedene Mal; I am surprised, Es ist mir schwer zu begreifen; to request, bitten; as, da; I will speak frankly, so sage ich es Ihnen frei heraus; be so kind as to avoid, vermeiden Sie gefälligst; you will much oblige your, Sie werden dadurch unendlich verpflichten Ihren.

11.

—— I have invited a few of my friends to tea, and sent word to Sophia, to call for you on her way. Be so

kind as to be ready at about three o'clock. We shall be very merry; we shall have a dance and play at forfeits. I hope you will not refuse us the pleasure of your company.

EXPLANATIONS.

To invite, einladen; to tea, zum Thee; on her way, im Vorbeigehen; about three o'clock, gegen drei Uhr; ready, bereit; to be very merry, recht lustig seyn; to play at forfeits, Pfänder spielen; to refuse, versagen.

12.

I am sorry my dear friend that I shall not be able to spend the evening with you. Mrs. R.— has sent us word that she is going to pay us a visit with her two nieces, who wish to be introduced to me. I am fearful I shall receive them but indifferently, to punish them for having deprived me of the pleasure which I should have had in your agreeable company. Be as merry as you can, but do not dance too much, for you know too much is unwholesome.

Emilie.

EXPLANATIONS.

I am sorry, es thut mir leid; to spend the evening, den Abend zubringen; with you, bei Ihnen; Mrs. R.— die Frau R.—; to pay a visit, besuchen; to be introduced to me, meine Bekanntschaft zu machen; I shall receive them but indifferently, ich werde Ihnen aber sicher ein unfreundliches Gesicht machen; to have deprived, &c., say—because they have, &c., to deprive, berauben; be as merry as you can, machen Sie sich recht lustig; unwholesome, ungesund.

13.

Dear Cousin,—The bearer of this letter is Mr. H.—, whom I have so often mentioned in my letters. I recom-

mend his friendship to you. You will not doubt of his being worthy of it, having already said so much in his favour. Endeavour to make his stay in your town as agreeable as you can. You will not repent it; for his company will afford you so much pleasure, that I should envy you, if I had less affection for you.

EXPLANATIONS.

The bearer, der Ueberbringer; to mention, Erwähnung thun; of his being worthy of it, daß er derselben würdig ist; said so much in his favour, so viel Gutes von ihm gesagt habe; endeavour, Suchen Sie gefälligst; you will not repent it, es wird Sie nicht bereuen; to envy, beneiden.

14.

Dear Friend,—The news of the death of your brother has so affected me, that I am at a loss what to say to console you; indeed I require consolation myself. You have lost a brother and I have lost one of my best friends. But what use are complaints! He is happy! happier than we; for he is unconscious of the sorrow which his loss causes us. We shall one day go to him, and then no death will be able to separate us. This is all that I can say for the present.

EXPLANATIONS.

The news of die Nachricht von; has so affected me, hat mich so empfindlich gerührt; that I am at a loss, say—that I know not, to require, bedürfen; what use are complaints, was helfen uns Klagen; for he is not conscious, denn er empfindet nicht; sorrow, Schmerz; to cause, verursachen; for the present, für dieses Mal.

15.

You desire to know, my dear Cousin, how I spend my

time, and with what I am engaged. I have but little to tell you about my pleasures. I am continually occupied in improving myself in those branches of knowledge which are necessary for a person in my situation, and every day is the same with me. Yet I am not wearied, I have even many happy moments, and that in which I write to you is the most happy.

EXPLANATIONS.

To desire, *wollen*; how I spent, *womit ich*—zubringe; to be engaged in, *sich beschäftigen*; to tell of my pleasures, *von Belustigungen zu erzählen*; in improving myself in those branches of knowledge, *mich in den Kenntnissen zu vervollkommen*; to be the same for, *gleich aussehen*; not to be wearied, *nie lange Weile haben*; even, *vielmehr*; those in which, *diejenigen wo*.

16.

Dear Parents—It is with the greatest pleasure that I learn from your letter that you are not only arrived in safety in Wiesbaden, but that the baths and the waters have been beneficial to you. I sincerely hope and pray that on your return you may be perfectly recovered. You may easily imagine what a delight that will be for

Your very obedient Son.

EXPLANATIONS.

Dear Parents, *Wertheſte Aeltern*; that I learn from your letter, *habe ich aus Ihrem Schreiben erſehen*; but that, *ſondern auch*; the waters, *die Kur*; have been beneficial to you, *daß Ihnen*—ſehr wohl bekommen; on your return, *bei Ihrer zurückerkunft*; perfectly, *gänzlich*; you may easily imagine, *Sie können ſich leicht vorſtellen*; your obedient, *Ihren gehorſamen*.

17.

Dear Friend,—The winter is approaching, and you have not yet paid us a visit. We readily believe that the sojourn in town is more agreeable to you than our dull village; but as it has pleased you in summer, it is but reasonable that you should not object spending a few winter evenings by our friendly hearth. Our wishes are, indeed, rather interested, but as we know that you are not indifferent as to whether your friends are happy, and have to thank you for their happiness, you will have no objection to excuse our requesting you to come and spread in our little family circle, joy, peace, and happiness. Do not forget your good friends in the bustle of the city, and believe us

Yours, &c.

EXPLANATIONS.

Is approaching, *kümmt heran*; readily, *gern*; the sojourn, *der Aufenthalt*; dull, *traurig*; it is but reasonable, *so wäre es wohl billig*; to spend, *zubringen*; friendly hearth, *freundschaftlichen Kamine*; interested, *eigennützig*; to thank for, *verdanken* (dative); you will have no objection to excuse our requesting you, *so werden Sie uns wohl die Bitte zu gut halten*; in the bustle, *in dem Geräusche*.

18.

You ask me, my dear Sir, what one should do, in order to write a good letter? The generality of letters are nothing else than epistolary conversations between absent friends. We should write, therefore, as if we were really in the presence of the person to whom we are writing. People who have received a good education, endeavour to express themselves in correct language, avoid whatever is harsh, and are polite to everybody. The same should be

observed in letters. All equivocal and low expressions should be carefully avoided. We should also write as neatly and plainly as possible, and this particularly recommends a young person.

EXPLANATIONS.

What one should do, Was zu thun sey; the generality of letters, die gewöhnlichen Briefe; epistolary conversations, eine Schriftliche Unterredung; people who have received a good education, Leute von guter Erziehung; to endeavour, sich be= fleißigen; to express one's self in a correct language, rein zu sprechen; avoid whatever is harsh, alles Unangenehme zu vermeiden; the same should, dieses muß man; to observe, beobachten; all equivocal and low expressions, Alle schwül= ftigen und platten Ausdrücke; we should also, also muß man.

19.

Dear Brother,—It is about a fortnight since I came here. What will you think of me that I have not written to you before? Anything you like, except that I have ceased loving you. Pardon my negligence, I was so tired from the fatigues of the journey, that I was quite exhausted. I fell twice from my horse, and I am still carrying my arm in a sling. On my arrival, Mr. R. had already set out for Basle. I have not a single friend in this place; however I hope I shall form some acquaintance before long. My master is a very gentlemanly man, who is beloved and esteemed by everybody. He is very well pleased with me, and I am so with him also. This is all that my time allows me to write to you for the present. Make my compliments to all who inquire for me, and be assured that I shall never cease to be

Yours, &c.

EXPLANATIONS.

Any thing you like, Alles was Ihr wollt; that I was quite exhausted, daß ich zu Allem unfähig war; I fell—from my horse, Ich bin—vom Pferde gestürzt; in a sling, in einer Binde; on my arrival, bei meiner Ankunft; I hope however, indessen hoffe ich; a gentlemanly man, ein rechtschafner Mann; to make one's compliments, grüßen.

20.

——— When shall I have the pleasure of seeing you again. It is now nearly six years since you departed from this place. Who would have believed that we should have been so long separated from each other? You promised me when you left you would often write to me, and you have, till the present, kept your promise very seldom. I often look at your portrait, which you gave me, and complain to it of its original; but neither answer (me). Remember, it will soon be fourteen months since I have heard from you. How will you excuse yourself? Confess freely that you cannot do it, and write to me a few lines, that I may know that you are still in the land of the living, and you sometimes think of him who will never forget you.

EXPLANATIONS.

Since you departed, daß Sie von hier abgerückt sind; to separate, trennen; when you left, bei Ihrer Abreise; I often look at, ich betrachte oft; and complain to it of its original, und beklage mich bei ihm über das Original; remember, bedenken; since I have heard from you, daß ich keine Nachricht von Ihnen erhalten habe; to excuse one's self, sich entschuldigen; confess freely, gestehen Sie mir offenherzig; that I may know you are in the land of the living, damit ich weiß daß Sie noch leben.

INTRODUCTION TO GERMAN TRANSLATION.

N.B. The Vocabulary and Explanations are at the end of these Lessons.

1.

*** These Lessons should be begun at the same time as the Exercises.*

See the Articles and Declensions of Nouns, pp. 7, 8—14—25.

Der Vater, die Mutter und das Kind. Ein Sohn und eine Tochter.

Ein Buch und eine Feder.

Die Väter, die Mütter und die Kinder. Die Söhne und die Töchter. Die Bücher und die Federn.

Eine Flasche. Die Häuser. Die Kirche. Die Gläser. Die Bäume. Das Schiff. Die Vögel. Eine Blume. Das Dorf. Ein Blatt. Die Pferde. Die Stadt. Die Städte. Die Kälber.

2.

See the Possessive and Demonstrative Pronouns, pp. 55—60.

Mein Freund. Meine Freundin. Mein Vogel und Seine Vögel. Unser Diener und unsere Dienerin. Ihr Papier, ihre Federn und Ihre Tinte. Dieser Herr und diese Dame. Jener Mann und Jene Frau. Dieses Mädchen und Jenes Knäbchen. Diese Straffe und jene Häuser.

3.

Der Kopf eines Pferdes. Das Gelb dieses Mannes. Die Finger der Hand meiner Schwester. Das Wasser der Quelle. Das Ufer jenes Flusses. Die Bäume meines Gartens. Die

Erziehung der Kinder. Der Frieden ist die Frucht der Liebe. Wo ist der Hut eures Vaters. Die Hitze des Sommers. Die Dankbarkeit des Herzens.

4.

Continuation of Articles, Possessive and Demonstrative Pronouns, and Declension of Nouns.

Ich habe den Brief Ihres Lehrers. Kennen Sie meine Schwester und meinen Bruder. Er kaufte einen Esel. Der Buchhändler verkauft Bücher. Ich suche eine Gelegenheit. Haben Sie die Fabel gelernt? Der Hund dieses Mannes hat meinen Handschuh. Er hat mit dem Könige gesprochen. Wer gibt Ihrem Bruder Unterricht? Diese Summe dient meinem Bruder dazu seine Schulden zu bezahlen. Sie haben meiner Schwester erlaubt meinem Neffe zu schreiben. Er gewöhnt den Vogel aus seiner Hand zu essen. Er wird unserm Gärtner Geld schicken.

5.

Declension of Adjectives, (see p. 34.)

Er ist schön. Sie ist schön, Sie sind schön. Mein Vater ist gut, meine Mutter ist gut, und meine Freunde sind gut. Ist er klug. Ist sie klug. Sind sie klug. Der Vater liebt seine guten Kinder. Das gute Kind liebt seinen guten Vater. Meine gute Mutter hat ihrer hübschen Tochter ein schönes Buch gegeben. Sein reicher Oheim ist gestorben. Haben Sie je ein wildes Pferd gesehen. Kennen Sie diesen großen Herrn. Sauerer Bier und Sauerer Wein sind ungesund. Ich habe einen großen Elephant gesehen. Was haben Sie dem armen Manne gegeben. Sein Bruder ist ein gelehrter Mann. Ein schönes Mädchen ist nicht immer ein gutes Mädchen. Wo haben Sie diesen schwarzen Hut gekauft. Das Buch des fleißigen Kindes ist verloren.

Wir hatten eine grosse Freude. Haben Sie eine gute Feder? Ich habe eine sehr gute.

Ein Weltweiser war einst in einem Schiffe während eines Sturms mit einer grossen Anzahl böser Leute, welche die Götter anriefen: Schweiget stille, sagte er zu einem von diesen Menschen, damit die Götter nicht gewahr werden, daß ihr hier seyd.

6.

Degrees of Comparison, (see p. 40.)

Das Wetter ist heute schöner als gestern. Ist Johann fleissiger als sein Bruder? Dieser Wein ist so sauer als Essig. Der Stahl ist härter als das Eisen. Wo ist Ihre älteste Schwester? Sind seine Brüder nicht reicher als Sie. Unsere Grammatik ist besser als die Ihrige. Ihr Lehrer ist eben so bescheiden als unterrichtet. Die Rose ist die Schönste Blume. Mein Nachbar hat weniger Freunde als ich, allein er hat doch mehr als sein Schwager. Das Mittel ist schlimmer als das Uebel. Paris hat nicht so viel Einwohner als London. Ich habe Mitleiden mit diesem armen Knaben. Wir haben einen heissen Sommer gehabt. Meine Bücher sind gut, allein die seinigen sind noch besser. Es sind bessere Bücher als die seines Lehrers. Die besten Bücher sind immer theuer. Dieses Haus ist höher als es breit ist. Welcher ist der grösste Welttheil? Asien, und der heisseste ist Africa. Der Fuchs ist das listigste aller Thiere. Ist nicht die Frucht der Arbeit das süsseste Vergnügen. Er spricht gut Deutsch, allein mein Bruder spricht besser. Geben Sie mir ein besseres Messer.

7.

Personal Pronouns and the Auxiliaries haben and seyn.

(see pp. 49—77.)

Ich habe es. Haben Sie es? Nein, ich habe es nicht. Wo sind Sie? Ich bin hier. Hat er viel Geld? Nicht so viel als

sein Bruder. Was werden Sie ihm geben? Ich werde ihm nichts geben. Hat Ihre Schwester mich gesehen? Sie hat Sie gesehen. Was habt Ihr ihnen versprochen? Wo waren Sie gestern? Ich war zu Hause. Würden Sie es ihm geben, wenn Sie es hätten. Ich würde es ihm geben wenn ich es hätte. Mein Freund hatte mehr Freunde als Sie. Das ist wahr, aber jetzt hat er keine. Wenn ich reicher wäre, würde ich mehr Freunde haben. Glauben Sie daß ich Recht habe? Nein, Sie haben Unrecht. Wir hatten Hunger und Durst, und wir hatten nichts zu essen noch zu trinken. Wer hat meine Feder gehabt? Ist meine Tante hier gewesen. Wenn ich Ihre Feder gehabt hätte, so würde ich es gesagt haben. Wann werde ich die Ehre haben, Sie bei mir zu sehen? Seyn wir nicht unzufrieden. Lassen Sie uns Geduld haben. Ich wünschte, Sie hätten das, was Sie so sehnlich verlangen, und ich hätte das, was ich wünsche; was würden wir so glücklich seyn! Es ist leicht zu sagen: Ich bin zufrieden; aber es ist schwer es immer zu seyn.

8.

Possessive, Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns, (see pp. 55—60—64.)

Hat er mit dieser Frau und mit diesem Manne gesprochen. Werden Sie diesen Garten kaufen? Die Zimmer dieses Hauses würden mir gefallen wenn sie gröffer wären. Dieser arme Mann ist immer vergnügt. Derjenige ist nicht am glücklichsten, welcher alles hat, was er verlangt; sondern derjenige, welcher nicht verlangt (das), was er nicht hat. Diejenigen sind zu beklagen, welche nicht das Vergnügen der Arbeit kennen. Welchen kleinen Knaben wollen Sie die Bücher geben? Ich will sie denjenigen geben die ohne Fehler geschrieben haben. Das ist meine und meines Bruders Meinung. Lieben Sie das Haus meines Vaters? Nein, ich liebe das meinige. Wem gehört

dieses Schiff? Es gehört meinem Lehrer. Kennen Sie diese Herren? Ich kenne sie nicht. Hat ihr Bruder mit jenem Manne gesprochen? Er hat mit ihm gesprochen. Wer hat es gethan? Hat jener Knabe es gethan? Wo ist mein Federmesser? Wer hat es genommen? Ich weiß nicht wer es genommen hat. In welchem Zustande sind seine Angelenheiten? Welchen Hut werden Sie kaufen? Jener ist besser als dieser.

Unter allen Gemälden ist dieses das schönste. Die sind reich die nichts begehren. Was hat er für eine Krankheit? Welcher von diesen Männern hat es gesagt? Wir werden einen andern Lehrer bekommen. Wer von Euch kann es thun? Womit werden Sie Ihren Brief anfangen? Wem haben Sie es gegeben? Er hat es Niemanden gegeben. Man muß weder geizig noch verschwenderisch seyn. Glauben Sie das? Das ist nicht wahr. Bei welchem Buchhändler haben Sie dieses Buch gekauft? Welchem von diesen Knaben hat er einen Brief geschickt? Ist jemand hier gewesen? Nein, niemand ist hier gewesen. Was hat man ihnen gesagt? Man hat nichts gesagt. Wer gibt Ihnen Unterricht? Was verlangt diese Frau? Man hat mir sehr empfohlen diese Bücher zu lesen. Ein solches Geschenk ist nicht zu verrachten. Die ganze Familie war da. Er hat ein ganzes Buch gelesen. Hat er viele Freunde? Er hat keine. Wer reich ist, ist alles. Ich habe wenig Geld. Das ist etwas wunderbar. Nimm alles was auf dem Schenkflisch liegt. Was ist das für ein Lärm? Was sind das für Bücher. Jedes Alter hat seine Freuden. Geben Sie mir anderes Papier, andere Federn, und andere Oblaten. Einige dieser Blumen haben Dornen. Irgend ein Unwissender muß es gethan haben. Jedermann muß meiner Meinung seyn.

9.

ON VERBS IN GENERAL.

Wie befinden Sie sich? Recht wohl, und Sie? Wieviel

Febern haben Sie? Ich habe nur eine. Ist ihr Bruder zu Hause? Nein, er ist ausgegangen. Wem haben Sie es gesagt? Meinem Oheim (Uncle) Sagen Sie es Ihrem Bruder wenn er kommt. Ich werde es ihm Morgen sagen. Haben Sie es ihm gesagt? Verstehen Sie mich, Fräulein? Ich verstehe Sie nicht. Haben Sie mich verstanden? Liebt der Vater den Sohn? Ja, aber der Sohn thut nicht immer was der Vater ihm sagt. Kennen Sie den jungen Grafen? Ich kenne ihn. Haben Sie meine Neffen und meine Nichten gesehen? Ich habe sie beide gesehen. Wissen Sie wieviel Geld er ihnen gegeben hat? Nein, ich weiß es nicht; ich habe es nicht gehört. Wie viel Geld hat er gewonnen? Haben Sie die Uhr aufgezogen? Ich werde sie Morgen aufziehen. Lernen sie Französisch? Ja, und Deutsch auch. Wer hat dieses Buch gebunden? Wer hat es geschrieben? Ich liebe die Blumen. Pflücken mir eine Rose. Wissen Sie wer diese Kirche gebauet hat? Die Morgenröthe kündigt den Tag an. Was verlangen Sie? Wir werden ein Gewitter bekommen.

10.

Das Kind hat die Milch getrunken. Hat der Bediente das Licht gebracht? Was gab er Ihnen? Er gab mir einen Apfel. Ich habe viel Mühe mit ihr gehabt. Was that er? Er schlief. Er kam gestern. Wann fing er seine Arbeit an? Er blieb in Frankreich. Dieser Brief ist so undeutlich geschrieben, daß ich ihn nicht lesen kann. Um sprechen zu können, muß man zuhören können. Konnten Sie es sehen? Wann ist er ausgegangen? Wirf das aus dem Fenster. Er nahm ihm beim Arme. Sie saßen auf hölzernen Stühlen. Straßburg liegt am Rhein. Was hat er gefunden? Wieviel Seiden haben Sie übersetzt. Dieses Stück gefällt mir. Es gefiel meiner Mutter. Mein Bedienter kann weder lesen noch schreiben. Mein Vater hat niemals Me-

dicin eingenommen. Wir haben alle Gläser gefüllt. Haben Sie den Brief zugemacht? Wann frühstücken Sie? Ich habe schon gefrühstückt. Warum weinen Sie? Ich weine nicht, ich lache. Schläft das Kind? Wo werden Sie den Abend zubringen? Gefällt Ihnen diese Maß. Es thut mir leid Sie nicht zu Hause gefunden zu haben. Leben Sie wohl. Er lud mich ein mit ihm zu Mittag zu speisen. Hört es auf zu regnen? Haben Sie mir nicht versprochen mir zu schreiben? Ich erinnere mich nicht ihn je gesehen zu haben. An wem ist die Reihe zu lesen? Er liest ein Buch. Das Sommer halbjahr fängt mit dem Monat April an, und endiget mit dem Monat September. Ich bin ein halbes Jahr krank gewesen. Der Januar fängt mit dem Tage des Neujahrs Geschenke an. Es hat stark gefroren. Das Wasser, welches in den Strassen floß, ist gefroren. Wie alt sind Sie? Ich werde bald zwanzig Jahr alt seyn. Aschermittwoch fällt dieses Jahr auf den zwanzigsten Februar. Es ist noch sehr kalt, aber die Tage sind ein wenig länger. Der Wind hat mir zu Boden geworfen. Die Obstbäume haben gewöhnlich nicht so viel Blätter als die andern Bäume. Es hat so geregnet daß wir nicht aus der Stube gehn konnten. Das Wetter ist jetzt sehr schön. Die Bäume stehen fast alle in der Blüthe. Das ist es worüber ich mit ihm gesprochen habe.

11.

Brauch ihr Vater eine Brille? Mein Großvater hat seine Brille verloren. Ich habe Sie gefunden. Danke Ihnen. Sie sind sehr gütig. Sie haben schlecht geschrieben. Ich hatte eine schlechte Feder. Leihen Sie mir drei Schillinge? Ich kann es nicht thun. Er hat zu viel Wein getrunken. Er soll mehr Wasser trinken. Das ist das Beste das er thun kann. Er war das sechste Kind einer armen Wittwe, welche starb und sie alle jung hinterlies. Sie haben nicht an das gedacht was Sie mir

versprochen haben. Weiß er wovon ich mit ihr gesprochen habe. Haben sie noch keine Nachricht erhalten? Werden Sie an Ihrem Geburtstage viele Geschenke bekommen? Was für schöne Eigenschaften man auch habe, man ist nicht ohne Fehler. So klein auch mein Haus ist, ist es doch sehr bequem. Dieses Mittel hat der Kranke wieder ins Leben gebracht. Wollen Sie mir die Zimmer dieses Hauses zeigen? Als wir nach Hause gingen, sahen wir Ihren Bruder. Haben Sie die Nachtigall singen hören? Wenn ich Zeit hätte, würde ich auf die Felder spazieren gehen. Ich muß nicht unterlassen diesen Abend meinen Garten zu begießen. Die Kleider der Armen Frau waren ganz zerrissen.

12.

Gebuld überwindet Alles.

Aller Anfang ist schwer.

Ohne Mühe hat man nichts.

Die Kunst ist lang, das Leben ist kurz.

Fürchtet Gott! dann wirst Du auch Vater und Mutter fürchten.

Armuth ist keine Schande.

Gott lieben ist die größte Weisheit.

Der Abend krönt den Tag.

Auch den Thor, wenn er schweigt, hält man oft für klug.

Die Furcht regiert die Welt, und die Hoffnung tröstet sie.

Ein Edles Herz glänzt hell und hold.

Der Anfang aller Weisheit ist Gottesfurcht.

Salz und Brod macht Wangen roth.

Sey langsam und bedacht, ehe Du handelst; aber schnell und entschlossen, wenn du handelst.

13.

Die Großmuth verzeiht, und die Unklugheit vergißt.

Stille Wasser sind tief.

Müßigang ist aller Laster Anfang.

Eine Unze Eitelkeit verdirbt einen Centner Verdienst.

Man soll den Tag nicht vor dem Abend loben.

Zuviel ist ungesund.

Eine Blume ist nur eine Blume für den Schmetterling; für die Biene ist sie ein Erbgut.

Ein guter Nachbar ist ein edles Kleinod.

Neue Besen kehren rein.

Ein weiser Sohn ist die Freude seines Vaters.

Des Volkes Stimme ist Gottes Stimme.

Der Arzt, der einen Kranken behandelt, ist öfters einem Kinde zu vergleichen, welches das Licht pußt.

Den der Schöpfer ehret, warum sollten die Menschen den nicht ehren.

14.

Wer halb gibt, gibt doppelt.

Kein sterblicher ist sicher vor dem Unglücke, aber der süßeste Trost im Unglücke ist das Bewußtseyn, es nicht selbst verursacht zu haben.

Wenn die Noth am größten ist, ist Gott am Nächsten.

Wenn der Hirt über die Schafe böse wird, so setzt er ihnen einen blinden Anführer.

Die Wahrheit richtet sich nicht nach uns, sondern wir müssen uns nach ihr richten.

Wer viel verlangt, erhält gar nichts; der aber mit Bescheidenheit wenig verlangt, erreicht seinen Zweck.

Die Schmeichelei ist eine falsche Münze, so schön im Aeuffern, daß sie die größten Kenner oft an zahlung annehmen.

Nie vergiß deines Freundes, wenn du dein Glück gemacht haben wirst.

Die Lebenszeit der Menschen erhält ihren Werth nicht von

der Zahl der Jahre, die er gelebt, sondern von dem guten, das er gethan, und dem Nützlichen; das er bewirkt hat.

Reiche und Arme müssen unter einander seyn, der Herr hat sie alle gemacht.

Liebe deine Nächsten, so wie Du dich selbst liebst.

15.

Ein junger Prinz von sieben Jahren, den jedermann wegen seines Verstandes bewunderte, befand sich einst in einer Gesellschaft worin ein alter Hauptmann war, welcher sagte, indem er von diesem jungen Prinzen rebete: Die Kinder die so viel Verstand haben, haben gemeinlich sehr wenig, wann sie zu Jahren kommen. Der junge Prinz, welcher es gehört hatte, sagte zu ihm: Herr Hauptmann, Sie müssen unendlich viel Verstand in Ihrer Kindheit gehabt haben.

16.

Als Cicero seinen Tochtermann, der sehr klein war, mit einem langen Degen an der Seite kommen sah, sagte er: Wer hat denn meinen Schwam an diesen Degen gebunden?

17.

Thales wurde gefragt, was das schwerste und leichteste in der Welt sey? Das schwerste antwortete er, ist; sich selbst kennen zu lernen, und das leichteste, die Handlungen anderer Menschen tabelndwürthig zu finden.

18.

Froben, ein Stallmeister des Kurfürsten Friedrich Wilhelm von Brandenburg, bemerkte in einer Schlacht, das die Feinde vorzüglich auf das Pferd seines Herrn zielten, weil es sich durch seine helle Farbe von den übrigen unterschied.

Er bat ihn daher die Pferde zu wechseln, weil, wie er vorgab, das des Kurfürsten scheu wäre. Der Letztere nahm den Vor-

schlag an. Der treue Diener hatte aber nicht lange auf dem Thiere gefressen, als er erschossen wurde, und so durch die edle Aufopferung seines eigenen Lebens das seines Herrn rettete.

19.

Ein Schwäger hatte in einer Gesellschaft eine ganze Stunde lang abgeschmacktes Zeug geplaudert; endlich wandte er sich an eine Dame und fragte sie: nicht wahr, Madam, ich rede wie ein Buch? Ja, antwortete sie, wie ein Buch in Kalbleder gebunden.

20.

Ein Bettler kam zu einem Prälaten und bat ihm um einen Thaler; ich bin ein weitläufiger Verwandter von Ew. Hochwürden, sagte er.—Wie so? von welcher Seite? fragte der Prälat.—Von Adam her.—Nun, so nehmt diesen Kreuzer, gehet in der ganze Familie herum, und sucht von jedem Verwandten eben so viel zu erhalten.

21.

Nach der Schlacht bei Rossbach, sah Friedrich der zweite einen französischen Grenadier, der sich ganz allein gegen mehrere Husaren vertheidigte, und sich durchaus nicht ergeben wollte. Hältst du dich denn für unüberwindlich? fragte ihn der König, nachdem er befohlen hatte, ihn frei zu geben. Ja, Ew. Majestät, erwiderte der Franzose, wenn Sie nur mein General wären.

22.

Wie alt sind Sie wohl? fragte man einen Geizigen. Das weiß ich nicht genau, antwortete er, acht und vierzig oder fünfzig. Wie kommt es, daß Sie sich so wenig um Ihr Alter kümmern? Ich zähle meine Güter, mein Einkommen und mein Baares Geld, allein meine Jahre zähle ich nicht, weil ich wohl weiß, daß ich sie nicht verlieren kann, und daß sie mir niemand stehlen wird.

23.

Ein Prediger hatte die ganze Fastenzeit über gepredigt, ohne von einem einzigen seiner Zuhörer zum Mittagessen eingeladen zu werden. Diese Unhöflichkeit konnte er ihnen nicht verzeihen; er sagte daher auf der Kanzel: nun habe ich mein göttliches Amt erfüllt, ich habe euch alle Ausschweifungen, alle Laster vorgehalten. Von einem einzigen bloß habe ich euch noch nicht gesprochen, von dem Uebermaß an Essen und Trinken, denn ich weiß nicht, wie man bei euch bewirthet ist.

24.

Die Erde welche wir bewohnen, ist eine große Kugel; allein sie ist nur ein sehr kleiner Theil der Welt.—Sie wird von der Sonne erleuchtet und erwärmet. Die Anzahl der Thiere welche darauf leben, ist unermesslich. Der größte Theil unserer Erdkugel ist mit Wasser bedeckt.—Das Meer gewährt den Menschen mancherley wichtige Vortheile. Es enthält unzählige nützliche Producte, als Fische, Muscheln, Perlen, Corallen, Salz. Es trägt ansehnliche Schiffe, auf welchen man die Waaren von einem Lande in das andere führt. Es unterhält also die Verbindung unter den entferntesten Völkern.

25.

Hast du wohl einen größern Wohlthäter unter den Thieren als uns? fragte die Biene den Menschen: Ja wohl, erwiderte dieser. Und wen?—Das Schaaf, denn seine Wolle ist mir nothwendig, und dein Honig ist mir nur angenehm.

26.

Ein Arzt behauptete in Gegenwart des Herrn Fontenelle, der beinahe ein hundertjähriges Alter erreichte, und sehr gern Kaffee trank, daß dieses Getränk ein langsames Gift wäre. Ja, sagte Fontenelle zu ihm, ein sehr langsames; denn seit mehr als achtzig Jahren trinke ich es alle Tage.

27.

Die ersten schönen Frühlingstage hatten einen Edelmann veranlaßt seinen Garten zu besuchen, in welchen er seinen Gärtner zu arbeiten geschickt hatte. Da er hinein getreten war, suchte er überall seinen Gärtner; und als er ihn nirgends sah, ging er unter die Obstbäume, wo er ihn eingeschlafen fand. Er weckte ihn und sagte: Arbeitest du so?—Du verdienst nicht das Brod das du issest; du bist nicht werth, daß dich die Sonne bescheint.— Ich weiß es wohl, sagte der Gärtner; deswegen habe ich mich in den schatten gelegt.

28.

Als Rabelais einst bei einem Cardinal, dessen Artzt er war, zu Mittag speiste, schlug er mit seinem Messer auf den Rand einer Schüssel, worauf eine Lamprete lag, indem er sagte: Das ist sehr schwer zu verdauen. Der Cardinal, welcher seine Gesundheit sehr liebte, lies sogleich die Schüssel mit der Lamprete wegnehmen. Rabelais lies sie sich wiederbringen, und fing an davon zu essen was er konnte. Da der Cardinal es sah, sagte er zu ihm: wie mein Herr, Sie haben mir gesagt, daß diese Lamprete übel zu verdauen wäre, und doch essen Sie mit so gutem Appetit davon? Sie werden mir verzeihen, antwortete ihm Rabelais, ich habe von der Schüssel geredet, und nicht von der Lamprete.

29.

Heinrich IV liebte eins seiner Pferde so sehr, daß er einst sagte, er wolle den hängen lassen, der ihm dessen Todt hinterbrächte. Das Pferd starb, und ein Prahler benachrichtigte den König von diesen Verluste auf folgende Weise: "Ach, gnädigster Herr," sagte er, Ihr Pferd!—das schöne Pferd!—Ew. Majestät Pferd! O Himmel! das kostbare Pferd!—Ist Todt, rief der König hitzig aus, ich wette darauf.—"Sie müssen gehängt werden, gnädigster

Herr," versetzte der Prahler: Sie haben sich ja selbst die Nachricht davon zuerst gebracht.

30.

Ein General, der sehr neidisch über den Ruhm Anderer war, sagte zum Herzoge von Anguien, nachdem er die berühmte Schlacht bei Rocroi gewonnen hatte: was werden jetzt die Weiber zu Ihrem Ruhme sagen? Das weiß ich nicht, erwiderte der Herzog, ich wollte Sie eben darum fragen.

31.

Als ein französischer Offizier am Wiener Hofe angekommen war, fragte ihn die Kaiserin Theresia, ob er glaube, daß die Fürstin von S——, die er den Tag zuvor gesehen, wirklich die schönste Person von der Welt wäre, wie man sagte.; Madam, antwortete der Offizier, ich glaube es gestern.

32.

Alexander der Große kam auf seinem Zuge nach Asien durch eine Sandwüste, in der kein Wasser zu finden war. Endlich brachte ein Soldat etwas in seinem Helme dem Könige, der eben so sehr, wie das ganze Heer vor Durst lechzte.

"Wie," sagte "Alexander, soll ich der Einzige seyn, der da trinkt, während meine braven Kameraden verdursten?—Nein, das will ich nicht," und mit diesen Worten goß er das edle Getränk in den brennenden Sand.

Die Krieger, erstaunt über diese Großthat riefen mit Jauchzen: Führe uns wohin du willst, edler König,—wir sind nicht ermattet,—unter einem solchen Fürsten halten wir uns nicht für sterblich.

33.

Ein Araber war verirrt in der Wüste. Zwei Tage fand er

nichts zu essen, und war in Gefahr vor Hunger zu sterben, bis er endlich eine von den Wassergruben antraf, aus denen die Reisenden ihre Kameele tranken, und auf dem Sande einen kleinen ledernen Sack liegen sah. Gott sey gelobt! sagte er, als er ihn aufhob und anfühlte, das sind, glaub' ich, Datteln oder Nüsse; wie will ich mich an ihnen erquicken und laben! In dieser süßen Hoffnung öffnete er den Sack, sah was er einhielt, und rief voll Traurigkeit aus: Ach! es sind nur Perlen.

34.

Soliman, dieser stolze Beherrscher der Türken, dessen Talente sehr groß waren, und welcher einen grenzlosen Ehrgeiz besaß, griff Ungarn an, und nahm Belgrad ein, welches man als die Vormaur der Christenheit betrachtete. Er hatte so eben diese wichtige Eroberung gemacht, als eine gemeine Frau sich ihm näherte und sich bitter darüber beklagte, daß ihr einige Soldaten ihr Vieh weggenommen hätten, welches ihren ganzen Reichthum ausmache. Du mußt in einem sehr tiefen Schlaf gelegen haben, sagte der Sultan lachend zu ihr, weil du die Räuber nicht hast kommen hören. Ja, ich schlief, gnädiger Herr, antwortete sie, aber es war in der zuversicht daß Euere Höheit für öffentliche Sicherheit machte. Der Fürst, welcher Seelengröße besaß, billigte diese Rede so kühn sie auch war, und vergüttete auf eine angemessene Weise einen Schaden, den er hatte verhindern sollen.

35.

Die Römerin Cornelia, die vortreffliche Mutter der Gracchen, war eine der vornehmsten Damen ihrer Stadt, und erzog ihre beiden Söhne und eine Tochter so vortrefflich, daß sie die Bewunderung der ganzen Stadt waren. Einst besuchte Cornelia eine andere Dame. Diese kramte alle ihre Juwelen, Perlen, und andere Kostbarkeiten aus, und bat sie darauf, sie möchte ihr doch

auch ihren Schmuck zeigen; denn dieser müßte, nach ihrem hohen Stande zu urtheilen, alles in Art übertreffen. Eben waren ihre Kinder in der Schule. Cornelia lenkte also das Gespräch auf andere Dinge, um Zeit bis zu ihre zurückkunft zu gewinnen. Als sie kamen, und in das Zimmer traten, stellte sie dieselben vor, und sagte: Dies sind meine Juwelen, dies ist mein Schmuck.

36.

Friedrich II. klingelte einst in seinem Zimmer, da Niemand kam, öffnete er das Vorzimmer, fand aber seinen Leibpagen auf einem Stuhle schlafend. Er ging auf ihn zu und wollte ihn aufwecken; aber in demselben Augenblicke bemerkte er in der Rocktasche des Pagen ein beschriebenes Papier. Der König zog es heraus und las es. Es war ein Brief von der Mutter des Pagen, worin sie dem Sohn dankte, daß er ihr soviel für ihre Unterstützung von seinem Gehalte erspart und zugesandt habe.—Der König ging ganz leise zurück, holte eine Rolle Dukaten und steckte sie mit dem Briefe dem Pagen in die Tasche.—Balb darauf klingelte er so stark, daß der Page erwachte und in das Zimmer des Königs eilte. "Du hast wohl geschlafen?" fragte der König.—Der Page stammelte einige Worte zur Entschuldigung und führte dabei in der Verwirrung mit einer Hand in die Tasche, wo er die Rolle Dukaten entdeckte. Er zog sie hervor, ward blaß und sah den König mit Thränen in den Augen an, ohne ein Wort reden zu können. "Was ist dir?" fragte der König. "Ach, Sire," entgegnete der Page und fiel vor ihm auf die Kniee, "man will mich unglücklich machen, ich weiß von diesem Gelde nichts." O, sagte der König, wem es Gott giebt, dem giebt er es im Schlafe. Schicke das Geld deiner Mutter, grüße sie und melde ihr, daß ich für sie und für dich sorgen werde.

37.

Kaiser Joseph, der eines Morgens ganz allein, als Privatmann

gekleidet, in einer der Wiener Vorstädte spazieren ging, begegnete einem kleinen Knaben von zwölf bis dreizehn Jahren, der ihn weinend um ein Almosen bat. Dieser kleine sah sehr gut aus, und die Freierzigkeit leuchtete ihm aus den Augen. Wer bist du, mein Freund? fragte ihn der Fürst; wie heißt dein Vater? Ach, mein Herr, antwortete der kleine Unglückliche, ich habe nur eine arme Mutter. Mein Vater war ein wohlhabender Kaufmann; allein der Bankerott eines seiner Correspondenten hat ihn zu Grunde gerichtet: Wir haben Alles verloren. Mein Vater ist von Kummer gestorben. Meine Mutter hat Tag und Nacht gearbeitet, um ihre zwei Kinder zu erziehen; allein sie ist krank geworden. Sie hat weder Geld noch Freunde, und es fehlt uns an Allem. Ich soll den Arzt holen, und wir können weder seinen Besuch noch die Arznei bezahlen. Ach Gott! Gott!—Wohnt deine Mutter weit von hier? In diesem Quergäßchen, im letzten Hause, im dritten Stocke.—Der Fürst gab dem Knaben einige Goldstücke, und sagte ihm, er sollte einen Arzt holen.

Der Kaiser beschloß selbst die arme Wittve zu besuchen. Er fand bald das angezeigte Haus; ging hinauf, und trat in eine kleine Stube, worin er nichts sah, als einen halb zerbrochenen Tisch, einige elende Stühle, einen alten Schrank, und ein sehr schlechtes Bett, auf welchem die Kranke lag: zu ihren Füßen stand ein kleiner Knabe von sieben bis acht Jahren, welcher bitterlich weinte. Der Fürst nahte sich der armen Frau, und erkundigte sich nach ihrer Krankheit. Sie zweifelte nicht, daß er ein Arzt wäre, und sagte ihm: Ach! mein Herr, meine Krankheit ist nicht zu heilen, und ich würde ruhig sterben, wenn mir nicht der schreckliche Gedanke schwer auf dem Herzen läge, daß meine armen Kinder gänzlich auf der Welt verlassen seyn werden. Sie müssen den Muth nicht sinken lassen, sagte ihr der Monarch; Gott wird Ihnen beistehen. Haben Sie nicht ein Stückchen Pa-

pier und eine Feder? Der kleine Knabe riß ein Blatt aus seinem Schreibbuche. Der Unbekannte schrieb einige Zeilen darauf, und sagte zu der Wittve: Hier haben Sie etwas zum Stärken. Ich hoffe Sie bald wieder hergestellt zu sehen. Als er das gesagt hatte, ging er weg.

Wenige Minuten hernach kam fast ganz aufser Athem der älteste Sohn, von einem Mädchen begleitet, das einen Korb Lebensmittel trug. Ach! liebe Mutter, schrie er, der Himmel hat sich unser erbarmt. Ein Unbekannter hat mir Goldstücke gegeben: Sehen Sie! sehen Sie! was ich Ihnen bringe! Sie werden auch gleich einen Arzt bekommen, den ich auf seinen Befehl bestellt habe. Ach! du liebes Kind! sagte seine Mutter zu ihm, komm laß dich umarmen. Ein Arzt, den ich nicht kenne, ist so eben fortgegangen. Nimm auf dem Tische das Recept, das er mir da gelassen hat, und bringe es sogleich dem Apotheker. Der junge Mensch nahm das Papier, und da er es gelesen hatte, rief er: Mein Gott! was ist das? was sehe ich! das hat der Kaiser geschrieben; hier steht sein Name. Das Recept war eine Anweisung auf einen jährlichen Gehalt. Sobald die glückliche Mutter wieder ein wenig zu Kräften gekommen war, ging sie zum Kaiser, ihm ihre Dankbarkeit zu bezeigen. Er versprach ihr, für das Glück ihrer beiden Kinder zu sorgen.

38.

Die Wittve von Behra.

Benbeschir, der Kadi (d. h. der Richter) von Behra; eine betrübtte Wittve.

Benbeschir—Was fehlt dir, arme Frau, warum weineest du?

Die Wittve—Ach! Ohne zweifel bin ich arm. Dieser Esel, dieser leere Sack und die Kleider, welche mich bedecken, sind die

einziges Güter, die mir blieben; der Kaliph hat mir die anderen alle weggenommen.

B.—Der Kaliph!—und worin bestanden die Güter, deren er dich beraubt hat?

Die W.—Es war die Meierei, das Erbtheil meiner Väter und der Väter meines Mannes.— O, wie theuer war mir dieser Ort! da wars, wo wir geboren, wo wir erzogen wurden, wo unsere Zuneigung anfang, wo wir Gatten wurden; da war es, wo er starb.—Ehe er starb, empfahl er mir, niemals das Erbtheil unserer Vorfahren zu veräußern, sondern es unserem Sohne aufzubewahren, welcher vielleicht in dem Augenblick, wo ich spreche, sein Leben in der Armee des Kaliphen verliert, für einen Herrn, der uns Alles genommen hat.

B.—Aber aus welchem Grunde hat dir der Kaliph dieses Landstück weggenommen.

Die W.—Um daselbst ein Lusthaus zu bauen.

B.—(bei Seite) O, gütiger Gott! Er hat von dir so viele Lusthäuser empfangen, und um eins mehr zu haben, nimmt er seinem Nebenmenschen ihre einzige Wohnung (laut.) und was hast du dagegen empfangen.

Die W.—Nichts—Er bot mir anfangs eine kleine Summe an, aber da er sah, daß ich mich weigerte es zu verkaufen, hat er sich mit Gewalt dessen bemächtigt, was er nicht kaufen konnte.

B.—Hast du ihm nicht das Unglückliche deiner Lage vorgestellt?

Die W.—Ob ich es gethan habe? Ach, gebadet in Thränen und hingeworfen zu seinen Füßen, habe ich ihn gebeten, beschworen—ich habe ihm alles gesagt, was der Schmerz, die Angst, und die Verzweiflung eingeben können und—(sie kann nicht fortfahren.)

B.—Und er hat dich nicht angehört.

Die W.—(weinend) Und er hat mich hart zurück gestossen.

B.—(die Augen zum Himmel wendend) Vater der Menschen, er ist dein Stellvertreter auf der Erde, und er stößt diejenigen zurück welche nur Gerechtigkeit und Menschlichkeit von ihm verlangen, während Du doch ohne Born und in der Stille unsere ungerechtesten Bitten verwirfst.—Frau, gib mir auf einige Augenblicke diesen Sack und diesen Esel und folge mir von weitem. Ich habe einige Einfluß bei dem Kaliphen—Wo ist er jetzt ?

Die W.—Eben auf dem Terrain, welches ich sonst das meinige nennen konnte. Aber was gedenkst du mit diesem Sack und diesem Esel zu machen ?

B.—Sey darüber gar nicht unruhig und folge mir.

39.

Der Kaliph Hattam. Benbedchir.

B.—Ruhmvoller Fürst der Gläubigen.

Der Kaliph.—Ah ! sey willkommen, Benbedchir ! Es ist sehr lange, daß ich dich nicht an meinem Hofe gesehen habe. Von woher kommst du jetzt eben ?

B.—Ich habe eben mit einer armen Frau gesprochen (die) ehemals ein Bestß.....

Der K.—(mit ernster Miene) Ich errathe, was folgen soll, und will es nicht hören.—Mag die Empörerin für die Zukunft die Büchtigung ihrer ersten Weigerung dahin nehmen. Habe ich nicht das Recht, nach Belieben über die Güter und das Leben meiner Unterthanen zu verfügen ?

B.—Ohne zweifel, und du hast über sie hienieden eine unbegrenzte Macht !—Auch verlangt die arme Wittve nicht ihr altes Erbgut, sie will nur davon ein einfaches Andenken ; und ich komme, für sie, um die Erlaubniß zu bitten, den Sack, welchen ich mitgebracht habe, mit Erde anfüllen zu dürfen.

Der K.—Oh ! recht gern, und wenn es zehn Säcke wären, so

konntest du sie ihr füllen . . . Bald, bald wirst du dies Landstück nicht wieder erkennen; sieh, Benbehir, dort werde ich einen prächtigen Sommer Pallast erbauen lassen, hier einen Springbrunnen; weiter dort lasse ich einen Thurm errichten, welcher die ganze Gegend beherrschen soll.

B.—(immer beschäftigt seinen Sack anzufüllen) Ja, im Augenblick werde ich fertig seyn: und ich bereite mich vor, glorreicher Kaliph, eine andere Bitte an dich zu thun, (die) aber noch unwichtiger, (ist) als die erste.

Der K.—Was für eine?

B.—Dieser Sack ist jetzt angefüllt, ich beschwöre dich, mir ihn auf meinen Esel laden zu helfen.

Der K.—Welcher sonderbare Vorschlag thuest du nun an mich? Rufe vielmehr einen meiner Sklaven.

B.—Nein, von dir muß ich diese Gnade erhalten; verweigere sie mir nicht.

Der K.—Unsinziger! diese Last ist zu schwer für mich.

B.—Zu schwer! Was! dieser Sack, welcher nur einen so kleinen Theil des Landstücks enthält, auf dem wir gehen, scheint dir schon zu schwer?—Ach! Fürst! und du schauerst du nicht bei dem Gedanken an den Tag, wo du vor deinem und unserm Richter erscheinen wirst, wo nicht allein dieser Sack, sondern dieses ganze Landstück, mit den Pallästen und Thürmen, welche du darauf willst errichten lassen, dieses Landstück, benezt mit allen den Thränen, welche du die Unglücklichen hast vergießen lassen—für dich eine unerträgliche Last seyn wird.—Hier bist du unumschränkter Herr, mit einem Zeichen giebst du den Tod, durch ein Wort machst du tausend Unglückliche; aber es wird eine Zeit kommen, wo du mit deinen Sklaven gleich seyn wirst.

Der K.—Gleich mit meinen Sklaven.

B.—Ich irre mich—Sondern vielmehr die Auszeichnung vor

ihnen wird keine Strafe ausmachen. Du hast viel wegnehmen können, aber du wirst auch viel zu büßen haben. Ein jeder von uns wird nur von den Gütern Rechenschaft ablegen, welche ihm anvertraut sind, und du wirst für alle unsere Güter einstehen—
 Lebe wohl, verzeihe diese Sprache. (Er will sich zurückziehen.)

Der K.—(ihn aufhaltend) Dir verzeihen? Oh! vielmehr (muß ich) dir danken—Rufe die Wittve! dieses ganze Landstück ist ihr wieder erstattet, und um sie zu entschädigen für die Thränen, welche ich ihr ausgepreßt habe, soll es uns Doppelte vergrößert werden, auf Kosten meiner Gärten, welche daran liegen. . . . Und du entferne dich nicht von meinem Hofe; ich will dich würdig belohnen. Die Fürsten bedürfen eines Führers, welcher ihnen den rechten Weg zeigt, und sie auf ihre Fehler aufmerksam macht; von nun an sollst du der meinige seyn.

40.

Alexander in Afrika.

Auf seinem Zuge, die Welt zu bezwingen, kam Alexander, der Macedonier, zu einem Volke in Afrika, das in einem abgesonderten Winkel in friedlichen Hütten wohnte, und weder Krieg noch Eroberer kannte. Man führte ihn in die Hütte des Beherrschers, um ihn zu bewirthen. Dieser setzte ihm goldene Datteln, goldene Feigen, und goldenes Brod vor.—Esset ihr das Gold hier? fragte Alexander.—Nein, aber ich stelle mir vor, antwortete der Beherrscher, genießbare Speisen hättest du in deinem Lande auch finden können. Warum bist du denn zu uns gekommen?—Euer Gold hat mich nicht hier gelockt, sprach Alexander; aber eure Sitten möchte ich kennen lernen.—Nun wohl, erwiderte jener, so weile denn bei uns, so lange es dir gefällt.

Indem sie sich unterhielten, kamen zwei Bürger vor Gericht. Der Kläger sprach: Ich habe von diesem Manne ein Grundstück

gekauft, und, als ich den Boden durchgrub, fand ich einen Schatz. Dieser ist nicht mein; denn ich habe nur das Grundstück erstanden, nicht darin verborgenen Schatz: und gleichwohl will ihn der Verkäufer nicht wiedernehmen. Der Beklagte antwortete: Ich bin eben so gewissenhaft, als mein Mitbürger. Ich habe ihm das Gut, sammt allem, was darin verborgen war, verkauft, und also auch den Schatz. Der Richter wiederholte ihre Worte, damit sie sähen, ob er sie recht verstanden hätte; und nach einiger Ueberlegung sprach er: Du hast einen Sohn, Freund?—Ja!—Und du eine Tochter?—Ja!—Eure Kinder lieben sich?—O sehr!—Nun wohl! dein Sohn soll deine Tochter heirathen, und das Ehepaar den Schatz zum Heirathsgute bekommen. Alexander schien betroffen. Ist etwa mein Ausspruch unrecht? fragte der Beherrscher. O nein, erwiederte Alexander, aber er befremdet mich. Wie würden denn die Sache in eurem Lande geschlichtet worden seyn? fragte jener. Die Wahrheit zugestehen, antwortete Alexander, wir würden beide Männer in Verwahrung gehalten, und den Schatz für den König in Besitz genommen haben. Für den König? fragte der Beherrscher voller Bewunderung. Scheinet auch die Sonne auf jene Erde?—O ja!—Regnet es dort?—Allerdings!—Sonderbar!—Gibt es auch zahme, krautfressende Thiere dort?—Von mancherlei Art.—Nun, sprach der Beherrscher, so wird wohl das allgütige Wesen, um dieser unschuldigen Thiere willen, in eurem Lande die Sonne scheinen und regnen lassen. Ihr verdient es nicht.

VOCABULARY

AND

EXPLANATORY NOTES

TO THE

READING LESSONS.

N.B.—The figures refer to the Rules of the Grammar.* *M.* denotes masculine, *f.* feminine, *n.* neuter, *s.* singular, *pl.* plural, *p.* page. The terminations given in brackets shew the genitive singular, and nominative plural of nouns. *ä ö ü* denote that those vowels are modified in the plural, *v. r.* denotes verb regular, *irr.* verb irregular. *, †, ‡, &c. placed after a number refer to the bottom of that page.

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>Page 208, number 1.</p> <p>Vater, (s. ä,) father, 19</p> <p>Mutter, (ü,) mother</p> <p>Kind, (es, er,) child, 22 & p. 30</p> <p>Sohn, (es, e, ð,) son, 20</p> <p>Tochter, daughter, p. 15, N.B.</p> <p>Buch, (es, er, ü,) book, 22</p> <p>Feder, pen, 19</p> <p>Flasche, (n.) bottle, 21, & p. 29</p> <p>Haus, (es, er, ä,) house, 22</p> <p>Kirche, (n.) church, 21</p> <p>Glas, (es, er, ä,) glass, 22</p> <p>Baum, (es, e, ä,) tree, 20</p> <p>Schiff, (es, e,) ship, 20</p> <p>Vogel, (s. ð.) bird, 19</p> | <p>Blume, (n.) flower, 21</p> <p>Dorf, (es, er, ð,) village, 22</p> <p>Blatt, (es, er, ä,) leaf, 22</p> <p>Pferd, (es, e,) horse, 20</p> <p>Stadt, (e, ä,) 20</p> <p style="text-align: center;">2.</p> <p>N.B. Words of the former vocabularies will be very seldom repeated.</p> <p>Freund, (es, e,) friend, 20</p> <p>Freundin, (nen.) female friend, 29</p> <p>Und, and</p> <p>Diener, (s.) servant, 19</p> <p>Dienerin, 29, female servant</p> |
|---|---|

* By these references, and the promiscuous observations, the student will be constantly practiced both in all the rules of grammar, and matter for conversation and composition; the selection of readings having been purposely chosen for this desideratum.

- Papier, (es, e,) paper, 20
 Tinte, (n.) ink, 21, & p. 29
 Herr, (n. en.) gentleman, 21
 Dame, (n.) lady, 21
 Mann, (es, er, ä,) man, 22
 Frau, (en,) woman, 21
 Mädchen, (s.) girl, 19—28
 Knäbchen, (s.) boy, 19—28
 StraÙe, (n.) street, 21
 3.
 Kopf, (es, e, ö,) head, 20
 Geld, (es, er,) money, 22
 Finger, (s.) finger, 19
 Hand, (e, ä,) hand, 20
 Schwester, (n.) sister, 19
 Wasser, (s.) water, 19
 Quelle, (n.) well, 21
 Ufer, (s.) bank, shore, 19
 Fluß, (es, e, ü,) river, 21
 Garten, (s. ä,) garden, 19
 Erziehung, education, p. 29
 Frieden, (s.) peace, 19
 Frucht, (e, ü,) fruit
 Liebe, love
 Wo, where
 Hut, (es, e, ü,) hat, 20
 Hitze, (f.) heat
 Sommer, (s.) summer, 19, p.
 29
 Dankbarkeit, (f.) gratitude,
 p. 29
 Herz, (ens, en,) heart, p. 24
 4.
 Ich habe, I have
 Brief, (es, e,) letter, 20
 Lehrer, (s.) teacher, 19
 Kennen Sie, do you know
 Er kaufte, he bought
 Esel, (s.) donkey, 19
 Buchhändler, (s.) bookseller,
 19
 Verkauft, sells
 Ich suche, I seek
 Gelegenheit, (en,) opportunity,
 29
 Haben Sie, have you
 Fabel, (n.) fable, 18
 Geleinet, learned
 Hund, (es, e,) dog, 20
 Hat, has
 Handschuh, (es, e,) glove, 20
 Mit, with
 König, (es, e,) king, 18, 20
 Gesprochen, spoken
 Wer, who
 Gibt, gives
 Unterricht, (m.) instruction,
 lessons
 Summe, (n.) sum, 21
 Diente, served
 Dazu, thereto, for it
 Schuld, (f. en,) debt, 21
 Zu bezahlen, to pay
 Sie haben, they have
 Erlaubt, allowed
 Nefte, (n.) nephew, 21
 Zu schreiben, to write
 Er gewöhnt, he accustoms
 Aus, out
 Zu essen, to eat

- Ich werde—schicken, I will send, **Sehr**, very, (eine sehr gute, one is not expressed after an adjective)
- 18
Gärtner, (s.) gardener, 19
5.
Schön, fine, handsome, 31
Sie sind, they are
Gut, good, 32, 33
Klug, prudent,
Liebt, loves
Hübsch, pretty, handsome
Gegeben, given
Reich, rich
Onkel, (es, e,) uncle, 20
Gestorben, dead
Je, ever
Wild, wild
Gesehen, seen
Kennen Sie, do you know
Groß, great
Sauer, sour, 35
Bier, (es, e,) beer, 20
Wein, (es, e,) wine, 20
Ungesund, unwholesome
Was, what
Arm, poor, 33
Gelernt, learned, 33
Nicht immer, not always
Wo, where
Schwarz, black
Gekauft, bought
Fleißig, industrious
Verloren, lost
Wir hatten, we had
Freude, joy
- Weltweiser**, philosopher, 36
War einst, was once
Während, (gov. the gen.) during
Sturm, (es, e,) storm, 20
Mit, with
Anzahl, (f.) number, quantity
Böse, wicked
Leute, people, 23
Welche, who
Gott, (es, er, ö,) God
Anrufen, called upon
Schweiget stille, be quiet, silence
Sagte, said
Su, to
Von, of
Mensch, (en,) man, (in the sense of mankind)
Damit, in order that
Nicht gewahr werden, may not perceive or discover
Daß ihr hier seyd, that you are here
6.
Better, (s.) weather, 19
Heute, to day
Als, 47
Gestern, yesterday
Johann, John
So, as
Essig, vinegar

| | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Stahl, steel, p. 80 | Groß, 41 |
| Eisen, (s.) iron | Welttheil, (es, e,) part of the world |
| Hart, hard, 41 | Asien, Asia |
| Alt, old, 39 | Fuchs, (es, e, ü,) fox |
| Grammatik, (en,) grammar | Listig, cunning |
| Besser, 43 | Aller, of all |
| Ihrige, 74 | Thier, (es, e,) animal |
| Eben so, just as | Arbeit, labour, work |
| Bescheiden, modest | Süß, sweet |
| Unterrichtet, informed | Bergnügen, pleasure |
| Rose, (n.) rose, 21 | Er spricht, he speaks |
| Nachbar, neighbour, p. 22 | Deutsch, German |
| Wenig, 44 | Geben Sie mir, give me |
| Allein, but | Messer, (s.) knife |
| Doch, yet, however | 7. |
| Mehr, 43 | |
| Schwager, (s. ä,) brother in law, 19 | Hier, here |
| Mittel, (s.) means | Viel Geld, much money |
| Schlimm, bad | Nichts, nothing |
| Uebel, (s.) evil, 19 | Gesehen, seen |
| Nicht so viel, not so many | Versprochen, promised |
| Einwohner, (s.) inhabitant | Gestern, yesterday |
| Mitleiden, compassion, pity | Zu Hause, at home |
| Heiß, hot | Wenn, if |
| Gehabt, had | Wahr, true |
| Einige, 74 | Jetzt, now |
| Noch, still, yet | Keine, none, 94 |
| Bessere, 46 | Mehr, more |
| Die, 80 | Glauben Sie daß, do you believe that |
| Immer, always | Recht, right, (Recht haben, to be in the right,) daß, p. 170 |
| Thuer, dear | Unrecht, wrong |
| Höher, 45 | Hunger und Durst, hunger and thirst |
| Breit, broad, wide | |
| Welcher, 84 | |

| | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Zu essen, to eat | Rennen, know, p. 130, note † |
| Zu trinken, to drink | Wollen, p. 134 |
| So, 219 | Ohne Fehler, without fault |
| Gesagt, said | Geschrieben, p. 132 |
| Wann, when | Meinung, opinion |
| Ehre, honour | Lieben, to love, to like |
| Bei, with, near, 276 | Gehört, belongs |
| Zu sehen, to see | Schiff, ship |
| Unzufrieden, discontented | Lehrer, teacher |
| Lassen Sie uns, let us | Herren, 21, see the list, p. |
| Geduld, patience | 22 |
| Ich wünschte, I wished | Gethan, p. 133 |
| Was, 91 | Genommen, p. 131 |
| So sehnlich verlangen, so ar- | Weiß, p. 134 |
| dently desire | Wer, 84 |
| Ich wünsche, I wish | Zustand, condition, state, 20 |
| Was würden wir so glücklich— | Angelegenheit, concern, busi- |
| seyn, how (happy) we | ness, circumstance, 21 |
| would be | Jener — dieser, 75 |
| Leicht, easy | Gemälde, picture |
| Zu sagen, to say | Ist dieses, 245 |
| Schwer, difficult | Die sind reich, 80 |
| Immer, always | Begehren, desire |
| 8 | Was—für, 87, 88 |
| Frau, woman | Von, 195 |
| Gesprochen, spoken | Ueber, 110 |
| Zimmer, room | Bekommen, to obtain, to get, |
| Gefallen, to please | to receive |
| Bergnügt, contented, satisfied | Kann, 130, thun, 133 |
| Derjenige, 79 | Womit, with what |
| Am glücklichsten, 44 | Anfangen, begin, 182, 183 |
| Alles, 70 | Niemand, 104 |
| Er verlangt, he desires | Man, 108, muß, 131—143 |
| Zu beklagen, to be pitied | Weber—noch, 215 |
| Arbeit, labour, work | Geizig, avaricious |

| | |
|--|---|
| Verſchwenderiſch, prodigal, la- viſh | Beſinden, irr. to find; ſich be- finden, irr. reflective v., to be, (used in ſpeaking of one's health) Wie beſinden Sie ſich? How do you do? Ich befinde mich wohl, I am well |
| Glauben, to believe | Recht wohl, quite well |
| Wahr, true | Wieviel, how much |
| Bei, 195—207 | Eine, 48 |
| Gefchickt, ſent | Zu Hauſe, at home |
| Empfohlen, recommended, 172 | Ausgegangen, (ausgehen, to go out, irr. v.) 183 |
| Leſen, p. 130 | Wem, 84 |
| Ein ſolches, 101 | Gefagt, (ſagen, to ſay, to tell) |
| Gefchenk, preſent, p. 130, number 5 | Kömmt, (kommen, to come, irr.) |
| Verachten, to deſpiſe | Ich werde—ſagen, 231 |
| Ganze, 98, 99 | Verſtehen, to underſtand, irr. |
| Biel, 106 | Verſtanden, (inf. verſtehen) |
| Rein, 94—wenig, little, few | Liebt, (lieben, to love, reg. v.) |
| Etwas, ſomething | Thut, (thun, to do. irr.) |
| Wunderbar, extraordinary | Was, 84 and 250 |
| Nimm, take, p. 131 | Kennen, to know, irr. |
| Schenktiſch, ſideboard | Jung, young, 32, 33 |
| Liegt, lies | geſehen, ſeen, (ſehen, to ſee, irr.) 18 |
| Was—für, 87, 88 | Beide, 100 |
| Lärm, noiſe | Wiſſen, to know, irr. |
| Freuden, pleaſure | Wieviel, p. 149 |
| Oblaten, wafers | gewonnen, (gewinnen, to win, irr.) |
| Einige, ſome, a few | Aufgezogen, (aufziehen, to wind up, irr.) |
| Dorn, thorn | Lernen, to learn |
| Irgend ein Untwiſſender, ſome ignoramus | gebunden, (binden, to bind, irr.) |
| 9. | |

N.B.—Words eaſily found in a dictionary will no longer be given; and as only the infinitive of verbs will be given, the pupil muſt therefore conſult his grammar as well as the dictionary for the meaning.

- Geschrieben, (schreiben, to write, irr.)
 Sprechen, to speak, irr.
 können, to be able, irr., 232
- Blumen, 21
 Muß (müssen, must, irr.)
- Pflüden; to pluck, to gather
 Zuhören, to listen
 gebauet, (bauen, to build,) 236
 konnten, (können)
- Sündigt, (ankündigen, to announce,) 235
 Ausgegangen, (ausgehen, to go out, irr.) 182
- Berlangen, to desire
 Wirf, (werfen, to throw, irr.)
- Bekommen, to obtain, to receive, to get
 Aus dem, 195
 10.
 Naß, (nehmen, to take, irr.)
 Beim, instead of bei dem, 15, 195
- Getrunken, (trinken, to drink, irr.)
 Saßen, (sitzen, to sit, irr.)
- Bebiente, servant, 36
 Hölzernen, wooden. N. B.
 gebracht, (bringen, to bring, irr.)
 The termination ern and en are added to a noun, to denote the material
- Gab, (geben, to give, irr.)
 Holz, wood, hölzern, wooden
- Mit ihr, 195
 Silber, silver, silbern, of silver
- Thut, (thun, to do, to make, irr.)
 liegt, (liegen, to lie, irr.) am, 195
- Schließ, (schlafen, to sleep, irr.)
 195
- Ram, (kommen, to come, irr.)
 Gefunden, (finden, to find, irr.)
- Wann sing er—an, 184, (anfangen, to begin, irr.)
 Uebersetzt, (übersetzen, to translate) 129, 130, 189
- Seine, 70
 Gefällt, (gefallen, to please, irr.)
- Blieb, (bleiben, to remain, irr.)
 irr.)
- Frankreich, France
 gestiel, (gefallen)
- Geschrieben, (schreiben, to write, irr.)
 kann, (können, irr.)
- Lesen, to read, irr. kann, (können, to be able, irr.)
 Lesen
 kann, 236
 Eingenommen, (einnehmen, to take, irr.)
- Um, in order to, for to; it requires zu before the next verb, 144
 Gefüllt, (füllen, to fill)
 Zugemacht, (zumachen, to shut to close,) for a letter, to fold
 Frühstück, to breakfast

- Weinen, to weep
 Lachen, to laugh
 Schläft, (schlafen, irr.)
 Zubringen, to pass, to spend
 gefällt, (gefallen)
 Thut, (thun, irr.)
 Leben, to live, (leben Sie
 wohl; farewell, adieu
 Lad—ein, (from einladen, to
 invite, irr.) 184
 Zu Mittage speisen, to dine
 Hört—auf, (aufhören, to cease,
 to leave off,) 184
 Regnen, to rain, 166
 Versprochen, (versprechen, to
 promise, irr.)
 Sich erinnern, to remember,
 page 92, note *, see also
 164
 Gesehen zu haben, to have
 seen, 232, 233
 An wem, 197—273
 An wem ist die Reihe, whose
 turn is it?
 Liest, (lesen, to read, irr.)
 Fängt—an, (ansfangen, to be-
 gin, irr.)
 Mit dem, 195
 Gefroren, (frieren, irr.) 168
 Fällt, (fallen, irr.)
 Zwanzigsten, 48—50
 Sehr kalt, very cold
 Wenig, adv. 44, little, (in
 quantity.) N.B. little, as
 an adj. is expressed by
 Klein—Der kleine Knabe
 spricht wenig, the little boy
 speaks little
 Länger, (comparative of lang,
 long,) 41
 Geworfen, (werfen, to throw,
 irr.) Zu Boden, on the
 ground
 Obstbaum, fruit tree, (p. 81,
 gender of compound nouns)
 Blätter, 22
 Daß wir—könnten, 236
 Schön, beautiful. N.B. Schön,
 (without being modified,)
 already
 Stehen, to stand, irr. (in der
 Blüthe stehen; to be in blos-
 som)
 Worüber, about which, (when
 the adverbs da or wo are
 combined with other words,
 they take an r if any of
 those words begin with a
 vowel, p. 66, *)
 11.
 Brauch (brauchen, to require)
 Verloren, (verlieren, irr.)
 Danke Ihnen, thank you
 Kann, (können, irr.)
 Soll, (sollen, irr.)
 Starb, (sterben, to die, irr.)
 Hinterließ, (hinterlassen, to
 leave behind, irr.)
 Gedacht, (denken, to think, irr.)
 Weiß, (wissen, to know, irr.)

- Erhalten, to receive, irr. Für, 203, 210
 Bekommen, to receive, irr. Der Anfang, &c., construe
 Was für, 84—111 Gottesfurcht ist der Anfang
 So klein auch, 111—doch, yet aller Weisheit
 Gebracht, (bringen, irr.) Entschlossen, (inf. entschließen,
 Wollen, irr. v. irr.)
 Zeigen, to shew 13.
 Nach, 209—279 Großmuth, page 32
 Gingen, (gehen, irr.) sahen, (se- Verzeiht, (verzeihen,) vergißt,
 hen, irr.) (vergeffen, irr.)
 Singen, to sing, irr. (singen Ist aller Laster, (construe ist
 hören,) 232 der Anfang aller Laster, 5)
 Wenn ich—hätte, 150 . Verdirb (verderben, irr.)
 Würde ich, 245, (spazieren, to Zuviel, too much
 take a walk) Edelc, 40
 Auf die selber, 203—274 Neue Besen, 35
 Unterlassen, to omit, to neg- Des Volkes Stimme, 5
 lect, irr. Der Arzt, der, 336, Kranken,
 Nicht, 257, begießen, to water, 36
 to sprinkle, irr. Zu vergleichen, 143, Welches,
 Ganz, 99 84
 Zerrißten, (zerreißen, to rend, Fußt, 98, 99
 to tear) Den, 80. Menschen, p. 22
 12. 14.
 N.B. The pupil having paid Wer, 85
 proper attention to the Am größten, 44
 verbs, will now only re- Sondern, 216
 quire occasional assistance Schmeichelei, 26, im Aeußern,
 about them. outwardly. An Zahlung
 Alles, 98 annehmen, to receive as
 Hat man, 108—240 pay. Daß sie, 250. Ber-
 Lang, long, 31 giß. (vergeffen governs the
 Fürchtet, (inf. fürchten) gen.) gemacht haben wirft,
 Wirft—fürchten, 231 236. Lebenszeit, (p. 31.
 Keine, 94, 96 Gender of compound
 Größte, 40, 41
 Fällt man, 223, 240

- words.) Nicht, 257. Von
 der Zahl, 9, note *. Die
 er gelebt, 157
- Nächsten, neighbour, fellow
 creature
- Nachbar, neighbour, one that
 lives near. Selbst, 67.
 liebt, 98, 99
- 15.
- Worin—war, p. 170, number
 2, and p. 66, note *. In-
 dem er—rebete, 236
- Die Kinder, 261—263
- Herr Hauptmann, p. 192, in
 Ihrer Kindheit, 62 to 66
- 16.
- Als—war, 141. Tochtermann,
 son-in-law
- 17.
- Wurde gefragt, 161, 162
- Kennen zu lernen, 232
- 18.
- Von Brandenburg, 203 —
 210
- In einer Schlacht, 195, unter-
 schied, (unterscheiden, irr.)
 daher, therefore. Wie er
 vorgab, as he pretended.
 Nahm—an, accepted, 235.
 Auf, 195, gefessen, (sitzen, irr.)
- 19.
- Eine ganze Stunde, 99
- Wandte (wenden, irr.)
- 20.
- Wat ihm um, 281. Ew. p.
192. Von Adam her, since
 Adam. Serum, about
 21.
- Bei Rosbach, 203, 210, 276.
 gegen, 203 to 210. Be-
 fohlen, (befehlen, irr.) Wenn
 —Sie wären, 150, 151
- 22.
- Wohl, (expletive, i.e. How
 old may you well be.) ge-
 nau, exactly. Sich beküm-
 mern, to concern oneself,
 to care. Güter, 22.
- 23.
- Zu werden, 161
- 24,
- Darauf leben, live upon it
- Mit Wasser bedeckt, 229
- In das andere, 197. Land, p.
 26, note *
- 25.
- Einen größern, 26, Als 47,
 dieser, 79
- 26.
- Gern, (comp. lieber, superl.
 am liebsten) is used with
 the verbs haben, sein, essen,
 trinken, hören, sehen, and
 some others, to show a
 willingness or liking. Ich
 habe ihn gern, I like him.
 Ich trinke gern Wasser, I am
 very fond of water. Und
 ich trinke lieber Wein, and I
 prefer wine

27.
Hatten einen Edelmann veran-
laßt, had excited a noble-
man. Hinein, 87. Da er
—war, 155, 156.
Suchte er, 240—244. Ein-
geschlafen, 184.
So, 111, 218, 219. Iffest
(essen, irr.)
Bescheinen, (the prefix be, de-
notes the action of a verb
all over the object: Bauen,
to build; bebauen, to co-
ver with buildings. Des-
wegen, on that account.
 28.
Deffen, whose —Zu Mittag
speiste, dined. To dine is,
zu Mittag essen or speisen; to
sup, zu Abend essen or spei-
sen. Dinner, das Mittagß
essen; supper, das Abend
essen. N.B. For dinner,
speisen or essen is often used
alone: Ich speise um sechs
Uhr, I dine at six o'clock.
Schlug, (schlagen, irr.) auf,
197, worauf, p. 66, note,
***. Lag, (liegen, irr.) In-**
dem er sagte, 141. Zu, 143.
Ließ, (lassen, irr.) when this
verb is followed by an ac-
tive verb, it signifies to
order, to cause to get done,
Ich ließ ihn rufen, I sent for
him, (i.e. I ordered, &c.)
Machen lassen, to get made,
wegnehmen, to take away.
N.B. Weg, used as a sep-
prefix, has the same sense
as away in English: weg-
werfen, to throw away.
Wieder, 190. Und fing an
davon zu essen was er konnte,
and began to eat it with
all his might.
 20.
Einß, 94, 95. Den hängen
lassen, to have him hanged.
Rief—aus, (ausrufen, irr.)
Darauf, 120, 121.
 30.
Der—war, 236, 239. Über,
197, 280. Zum, 15. Nach-
dem—hatte, 236. Zu, 285.
Um etwas fragen, to ask for
something, 281.
 31.
Angekommen war, 180. Fragte
ihn, &c. 223, 240. Für-
stin, 27, 30. Von, 266.
Gesehen (hat understood,)
157. Wäre, 150, 151.
Wie man sagte, as was
said.
 32.
Meine braven, p. 36, Rem.
4. Worten, p. 20. Goff,
(inf. gießen) einem solchen,
101.

33.
Vor Hunger zu sterben, 203—
210, and p. 191. Denen,
dative of der. used as a re-
lative pron. 89. Gott sey ge-
lobt, God be praised. Auf-
hob, (inf. aufheben,) Was
er einhielt, what it con-
tained. Rief—aus, (inf.
ausrufen, to exclaim.)

34.

Dessen, 90. Befah, (inf. be-
fehlen.) Griff—an, (inf.
angreifen.) Nahm—ein, (ein-
nehmen.) So eben, just.
Als, when. Nähern, (gov.
the dat.) Darüber, 120.
Einige, 96. Weggenom-
men, (inf. Wegnehmen, to
take away) Gelegen ha-
ben, p. 78, Rem. 1. La-
schend, 132. Hast kommen
hören, p. 100. N.B. 143.
So kühn sie auch war, 111.
Sollen, should, ought.

35.

Erzog, (erziehen) kamte—aus,
(auskramen) mochte, (mö-
gen) eben, just at that time,
um—zu, 144. Stellte—vor,
(vor—stellen) Dies, 77.

36.

Öffnete er, 240, 244. Ging
auf ihn zu, went up to him.
Beschriebens, (p. part. of

beschreiben, to fill with
writing.) Bog — heraus
(herausziehen, to pull out.)
Danke, (anken, gov. the
dat. of the person.) Zuges-
andt, (zusenden) dem Pagen
in die Tasche, in the pocket
of the page. N.B. When
there is no doubt as to
the possessor, the article
is often used instead of the
possessive pronoun, and
the possessor put in the da-
tive. Zur, 15, 285. Ward
sometimes used for wurde,
became. Sah—an, (an-
sehen, to look at, to con-
template.) Was ist dir?
What is the matter?

37.

Der — spazieren ging, 227.
Eines Morgens, p. 9, No.
2. Wiener, 37. Begegnen,
272. Bat, (beten, gov. um)
271. Sah—aus, (ausse-
hen, to look, to have the
appearance.) Leuchtete ihm
aus den Augen, shone out
of his eyes (see lesson, 36)
Fragte, (fragen, 272.) Wie
heißt dein Vater? What is
thy father's name! Heißen,
as a neuter verb signifies
to be named or called:
Wie heißen Sie? What is

your name? But used actively, it means to bid, to order. Was hat er ihn geheißen? What did he order him? Unglückliche, 36. Wohlhabent, opulent, wealthy. Zu Grunde richten, to ruin. Um—zu, 144. Geworden, (werden, to become,) p. 110* Weber—noch, 215. Es fehlt uns, we are in want of, 170.

Ich soll—holen, I am to fetch
Er sollte—holen, he was to fetch.

N. B. The verb sollen is used when the English verb *to be* expresses an indefinite future. Sie soll um drei Uhr hier seyn, she is to be here at three o'clock. It is also used to denote a report which may or may not be true. Er soll sehr reich seyn, he is said to be very rich. Wohnt (wohnen, to live, to reside, N.B. To live, to exist, leben.) Hinauf, p. 87. Nichts—als, nothing than. Nahte sich, (sich nahen, gov. dat.) Wäre, 150, 151. Muth, p. 32. Stüdchen, 28. Reiß, (reiß-

en,) Schreibbuch, copy book. Wieder hergestellt, again recovered. Kennen, p. 130, † Ist so eben fortgegangen, has just left. Nimm (nehmen) da er es gelesen hatte, having read it, 141—155.

38.

Was fehlt dir? What is the matter with thee? Deren, 90. Warß, (war es.) Geboren, 157. Sondern, 216. Dagegen, in return. Bot—an, (anbieten, to offer.) Dessen—was, of that which. Verwirrft, (verwerfen.) Mag, may, (Mögen) die Empörerin, &c. the rebellious woman receive for the future her punishment for her first refusal. Versüßen, to dispose. Zu dürfen, to be allowed. Recht gern, very willingly, with all my heart. Fertigt seyn, to be ready, to have finished. Bereite—vor, (sich vorbereiten, to prepare oneself) Was für eine, 87. Scheint, (scheinen, to shine, also, to appear.) Bergießen, (irr. v. to pour away, to shed.)

NORWICH:

PRINTED BY T. PRIEST, SAINT STEPHEN'S STREET.



